

Sample copy

UNIVERSITY OF HAWAII
LIBRARY

JUN 3 8 36 AM '70

Applications and Industry®

September 1960



Transactions Papers

General Applications Division

- 60-600 Electric-Locomotive-Maintenance Cost Equation.....Horine . . . 233
60-47 Computer Simulation of Railroad Operation.....Coupal, Garver, Smith . . . 236
60-602 French Technical Advances in Railroad Electrification.....Nouvion . . . 241

Industry Division

- 60-865 Transformation for the Study of Nonlinear Components....Lakshmi-Bai . . . 249
57-714 Adjustable Frequency Power Supply.....Bachelier, Helmick . . . 254
60-651 Equations for Evaluating Short-Circuit Forces.....Chin, Higgins . . . 260
60-636 Analysis of the Dynamics of an Electromechanical System.....Hyink . . . 267
60-779 Design of Servo Compensation.....Ross, Warren, Thaler . . . 272
60-849 Aircraft Storage Batteries.....Hamer . . . 277
60-863 Analyzing the Transient Response of a Nonlinear Servosystem....Stein . . . 287
60-867 Sampled-Data Control Systems with Digital Processing Units....Hung . . . 292
60-895 A Constant-Voltage Battery Charger.....Leet, Zug . . . 298

Conference Papers Open for Discussion.....See 3rd Cover

© Copyright 1960 by American Institute of Electrical Engineers

NUMBER 50

Published Bimonthly by

AMERICAN INSTITUTE OF ELECTRICAL ENGINEERS

Instrumentation Division

60-516	Linear Reactor Simulator...Schwartzenberg, Finan, Underkoffler, Brey . . .	353
60-78	Dual-Channel Reactor Protection for Nuclear Power Plants.....Bartu . . .	358
60-511	Transients in Logarithmic Count Rate.....Barrow, Maitland . . .	362
60-512	Digital Start-up Control for Nuclear Reactors.....Lehr, Mathis . . .	369
60-513	High-Speed Microcurrent Amplifier.....Dever, Sickles . . .	375
60-515	Aircraft Nuclear Reactor Control..Russell, Hemmenway, Scharf, Sharr . . .	379
60-514	Instrumentation for Experimental Reactor Kinetic Studies....Gardner . . .	384
60-660	Portable Dynamic Electronic Speed-Torque Indicator.....Weed . . .	388

Science and Electronics Division

60-120	Merits of Computers in Air-Borne Real-Time Control..Shackell, Tryon . . .	393
56-118	Electric Analog of a Magnetic Circuit.....Koenig . . .	400
60-75	New Ceramic Triode for VHF Applications.....Campbell . . .	404
60-215	LN 3000 Computer Control System.....Harple, Lex . . .	408
60-784	Bridge Magnetic Servoamplifier with Motor Load.....Walsh, Meiksin . . .	413
60-782	Pole and Zero Locations for Nondecreasing Step Responses..Zemanian . . .	421
60-783	Static Control for a Regulated D-C Supply.....Abrams, Brubaker . . .	426

Communication Division

59-1093	Data Processing as Tool for Generalizing Comm. Systems....Luebbert . . .	431
60-518	Moon Reflection Studies with Bistatic Radar.....Straiton, Tolbert . . .	436
60-43	The REA-1 Transposition System.....Chapman, Buscemi, Flanigan . . .	440

(See inside back cover)

Note to Librarians. The six bimonthly issues of "Applications and Industry," March 1960–January 1961, will also be available in a single volume (no. 79) entitled "AIEE Transactions—Part II. Applications and Industry," which includes all technical papers on that subject presented during 1960. Bibliographic references to Applications and Industry and to Part II of the Transactions are therefore equivalent.

Applications and Industry. Published bimonthly by the American Institute of Electrical Engineers, from 20th and Northampton Streets, Easton, Pa. AIEE Headquarters: 33 West 39th Street, New York 18, N. Y. Address changes must be received at AIEE Headquarters by the first of the month to be effective with the succeeding issue. Copies undelivered because of incorrect address cannot be replaced without charge. Editorial and Advertising offices: 33 West 39th Street, New York 18, N. Y. Nonmember subscription \$8.00 per year (plus 50 cents extra for foreign postage payable in advance in New York exchange). Member subscriptions: one subscription at \$2.50 per year (balance of \$5.00 subscription price to be paid by application of annual dues) to any one of three divisional publications: Communication and Electronics, Applications and Industry, or Power Apparatus and Systems; additional annual subscriptions \$5.00 each. Single copies when available \$1.50 each. Second-class mail privileges authorized at Easton, Pa. This publication is authorized to be mailed at the special rates of postage prescribed by Section 132.122.

The American Institute of Electrical Engineers assumes no responsibility for the statements and opinions advanced by contributors to its publications.

Printed in United States of America

Number of copies of this issue 5,100

Electric-Locomotive-Maintenance

Cost Equation

J. W. HORINE

MEMBER AIEE

HAS generally been recognized that locomotive maintenance costs increase with age. However, the impact of today's inflationary economy has materially compounded these cost increases, and some measure of them is vital to make power replacement studies since we are to evaluate such increases properly and have serious future consequences. Unfortunately, statistical methods are available which can provide reasonably accurate forecasts by means of analyzing past costs, and then projecting the developed trend into the future.

The Problem

The solution, however, is not an easy one. First, that railroad which has failed to accumulate accurate locomotive maintenance data over a period of years on a given individual group of units is doubly handicapped since not only are the needed data unavailable, but also that road's operating records must have been excellent because the expense of compiling such detailed data would otherwise have been prohibitive.

Second, maintenance costs are not uniformly distributed in time. Major overhauls, variously known as "class repair," "mileage overhauls," or "scheduled heavy repairs," are generally made on the locomotives at intervals of 3 or more years, and distort annual figures.

A third group of distorting factors comes from fluctuations in the business health of the nation. Income is reduced when car loadings drop, and expenses (including locomotive maintenance) must be trimmed to help net revenue. "Deferred maintenance," which must some day be picked up, then enters the picture. Concurrently, locomotive mileage drops, power may be stored, further distortions in the data occur, and this, in turn, is again aggravated by the fact that while

some maintenance costs vary with mileage, others are a function of time.

Finally, inflation wields an overriding power on all of the foregoing variants, and labor and material costs intermittently and nonconcurrently spurt ahead or hold level for short periods.

Out of this confusion of figures it is desired to isolate the trend of rising costs which can be attributed to age. Of first consideration is the manner in which the costs are to be expressed. Three such measures, each with its advantages and disadvantages, are in general use: dollars per unit per year, cents per unit-mile, and cents per (rated) 1,000 rail horsepower-miles. The first cost expression needs no explanation, the second is obtained by dividing the dollars per unit per year by the annual unit-miles for that year and changing to cents, and the third cost expression is obtained by dividing the second (cents per unit-mile) by the rated rail horsepower of the unit expressed in thousands (i.e., 4.4 for a 4,400-horsepower unit).

This last measure will be used herein, primarily because it facilitates comparison between power units of different horsepower and reflects the decreased use due to greater shoppings with age.

The Data

A major railroad had recognized for some time that rising maintenance costs combined with obsolescence dictated the replacement of a certain class of electric locomotive, 2 of which were placed in service in 1931, 62 in 1934, and 28 in 1935. In November 1959, their retirement over the next 4 years was announced. This group, which can be said to have practically run out its life, has therefore been selected to illustrate the cost versus age relationship desired.

Admittedly, the available maintenance cost data are not exact in that they are costs for a pool of power containing a few electric locomotives of other classes. However, the class in question produced 87% of the horsepower-miles of the pool, and hence the figures are reasonably representative for that class and, for the sake of simplicity, the maintenance cost data used will hereinafter be deemed to be for that class. Further, the ages of the three groups of 2, 62, and 28 units have been averaged and centered, and this average figure has been taken as the unit age.

On the foregoing basis, in Table I, columns 1 and 2 show the reported maintenance cost versus age for these 92 locomotive units. These are the reported figures with no adjustments of any character, and are the basic data plotted in Fig. 1.

The Solution

It is self-evident that the costs for each year must be comparable in terms

Table I. Maintenance Costs in Cents Per 1,000 (Rated) Horsepower-Miles as Reported and as Adjusted to Year 1958 Base

Maintenance Cost as Reported	Locomotive Age, Years	Multiplier Factor to 1958 Base	Maintenance Cost Adjusted to 1958 Base
2.75	3	3.133	8.616
2.89	4	3.133	9.054
3.34	5	3.133	10.464
4.00	6	3.133	12.532
4.22	7	3.155	13.314
4.22	8	3.144	13.267
5.32	9	3.019	16.061
4.43	10	2.782	12.324
5.83	11	2.596	15.135
9.74	12	2.488	24.233
9.47	13	2.467	23.362
8.40	14	2.116	17.774
11.74	15	1.948	22.869
10.06	16	1.714	17.242
10.27	17	1.599	16.422
13.19	18	1.500	19.785
14.53	19	1.349	19.601
16.88	20	1.297	21.893
17.20	21	1.267	21.792
16.90	22	1.234	20.854
18.15	23	1.219	22.130
19.52	24	1.132	22.100
22.15	25	1.056	23.390
20.42	26	1.000	20.420

per 60-600, recommended by the AIEE Land Transportation Committee and approved by the AIEE Technical Operations Department for presentation at the ASME-AIEE Railroad Conference, Pittsburgh, Pa., April 20-21, 1960. Manuscript submitted January 15, 1960; made available for printing March 11, 1960.

J. W. HORINE is with The Pennsylvania Railroad Company, Philadelphia, Pa.

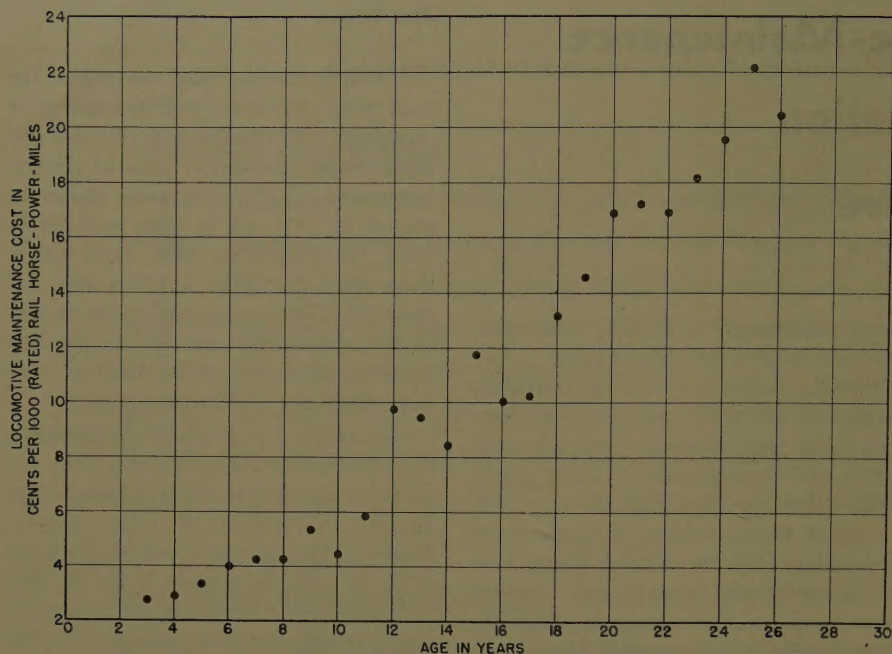


Fig. 1. Locomotive maintenance cost versus age, as reported

of the same dollar value, i.e., adjusted for inflation. This is readily done by calculating an appropriate multiplier for each year from published indexes of material prices and wage rates.¹ For the case in point, adjustment to base year 1958 was selected. The yearly multipliers and corresponding adjusted annual maintenance costs are shown in columns 3 and 4 of Table I, with these costs plotted in Fig. 2.

The problem now becomes one of determining the trend of a statistical time series, a relatively simple form of correlation between an independent variable (X , or age) and a dependent variable (Y , or cost). Generally, the proposed use of the trend, when found, dictates the degree of exactness and the form of solution used. If interpolation (i.e., determination of Y at some specific point within the range of the known data) is intended, then a fitted trend of maximum accuracy is needed. If extrapolation (i.e., projection of the calculated trend to determine the value of Y at some point outside the range of known data) is intended, then the simplest trend curve that reasonably fits the data should be used to minimize distortion and error. Extrapolation is, of course, the intended use, since the problem, in its simplest terms, could be stated as: "At what future age will the cost of maintenance plus fixed charges of these locomotives become greater than the cost of maintenance plus fixed charges of a new, modern locomotive?"

reveals an outstanding dissimilarity; the costs of Fig. 1 show an increase with age accelerating at an alarming rate, whereas the increases in costs of Fig. 2 appear to be decelerating with age. Since a straight-line trend (first-degree curve) would neither accelerate nor decelerate the cost change, the simplest curve that would represent the true condition conceivably could be a second-degree or parabolic trend.

This, then, has been calculated from the cost and age data of Fig. 2, details

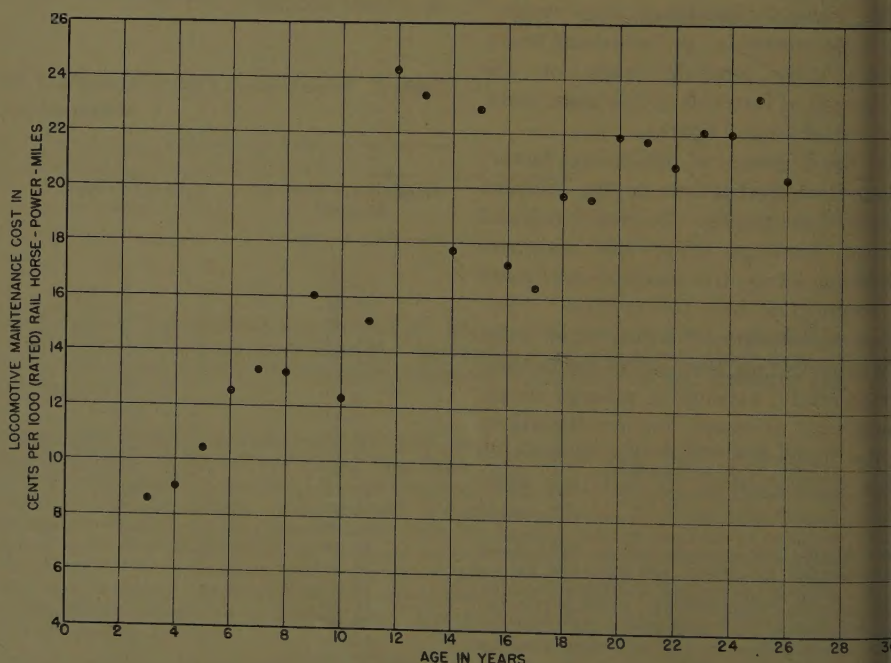


Fig. 2. Locomotive maintenance cost versus age, adjusted to 1958 base

of the calculation being shown in Appendix I. Fig. 3 reproduces Fig. 2 with the calculated line of trend shown as a heavy solid line within the data limits and with light dashed projection beyond data limits.

The question immediately arises as to the validity of these projections, and as to the degree of confidence that can be placed on their use. This must be known before such fitted curves can be used for rather important decisions. The solution, fortunately, is simple.

A measure of the degree of "goodness of fit, known as the Index of Correlation, can be determined from the calculation made in determining the trend. This index ranges in value from 0.0 for no correlation whatsoever to 1.0 for perfect correlation, i.e., the calculated curve would pass through every point of the data. This index has been calculated for the line of trend and has the value of 0.97. Details of the calculation are shown in Appendix II.

This value of 0.97 is unusually high for this type of statistic, and indicates that a high degree of confidence may be placed on the fitted trend, still bearing in mind that the projection presupposes no major changes in maintenance and operating practices from those which were in effect during the data period. Further, the curve could not be used to forecast maintenance costs of units of different physical characteristics, such as a rectifier-type locomotive with axle-hung motors as compared with improved modern insulations as compared with a straight electric locomotive with

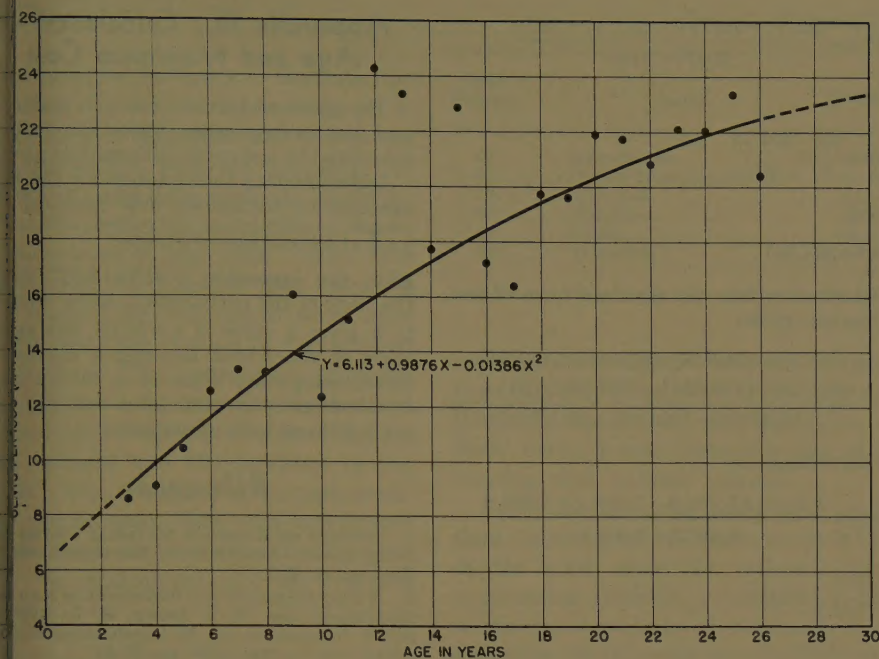


Fig. 3. Line of trend of locomotive maintenance cost versus age

me-mounted motors and the insulations commonly in use for the past several decades.

Application

It is evident from the shape of the line of trend, that it will eventually reach a maximum. The rate of growth is the first derivative of Y with respect to X and the maximum value of Y occurs when the rate of growth becomes zero. This occurs at 35.6 years with a maximum cost of 23.71 cents per 1,000 (rated) rail horsepower-miles. Details of the calculation are in Appendix III.

If continued on beyond that age, the projected curve would, of course, turn downward, a condition for which there is no apparent justification. Instead, if projected values beyond that age are required, it can only be assumed that maintenance costs have leveled off at that maximum value.

Conclusions

1. There is a definite relationship between age and electric locomotive maintenance costs which can be evaluated when reasonably accurate cost data are available.

2. The calculated trends obtained must be used with caution, and must not be assumed to apply to electric locomotives of different designs.

3. When a calculated cost trend reasonably fits the base data, projections

of the trend to forecast future costs for either power replacement studies or budgeting purposes and to determine the amount and age at which maintenance cost will be a maximum are of considerable value.

4. The chief value of these data in connection with consideration of new units lies in the fact that it can undoubtedly be assumed that new units will give a better performance.

Appendix I. Calculation of Line of Trend

The age in years X and the maintenance

cost adjusted to 1958 base Y are tabulated and values of X^2 , XY and X^2Y are calculated in Table II. It will be noted that costs and ages of 12, 13, and 15 years have been omitted. This has been done on the basis that the costs for those ages are badly out of line with other years, since these ages fell within the latter part of World War II when abnormal conditions prevailed and the accuracy of the reported data is questionable.

The method of least squares was used to derive a second-degree equation which expresses line of trend. The preliminary equation is shown in the following standard form:

$$\Sigma y = na + \Sigma xb + \Sigma x^2c$$

$$\Sigma xy = \Sigma xa + \Sigma x^2b + \Sigma x^3c$$

$$\Sigma x^2y = \Sigma x^2a + \Sigma x^3b + \Sigma x^4c$$

Substitution in this formula and subsequent solution gives:

$$354.13 = 21a + 308b + 5,658c \quad (1)$$

$$5,864.96 = 308a + 5,658b + 115,892c \quad (2)$$

$$114,254.05 = 5,658a + 115,892b + 2,510,682c \quad (3)$$

$$7,253.64 = 430a + 6,309b + 115,892c \quad (1)$$

$$5,864.96 = 308a + 5,658b + 115,892c \quad (2)$$

$$1,388.68 = 122a + 651b \quad (10)$$

(The values of Σx^3 and Σx^4 can be obtained from statistical tables.)

$$127,058 = 6,673a + 122,575b + 2,510,682c \quad (2)$$

$$114,251 = 5,658a + 115,892b + 2,510,682c \quad (3)$$

$$12,897 = 1,015a + 6,683b \quad (11)$$

$$14,256 = 1,252a + 6,683b \quad (10)$$

$$12,897 = 1,015a + 6,683b \quad (11)$$

$$1,449 = 237a$$

$$6.113 = a$$

$$1,388.68 = 745.78 + 651b \quad (10)$$

Table II. Calculation for Appendix I

X	Y	X ²	XY	X ² Y
3.....	8.616.....	9.....	25.848.....	77.544
4.....	9.054.....	16.....	36.216.....	144.864
5.....	10.464.....	25.....	52.320.....	261.600
6.....	12.532.....	36.....	75.192.....	451.152
7.....	13.314.....	49.....	93.198.....	652.386
8.....	13.267.....	64.....	106.136.....	849.088
9.....	16.061.....	81.....	144.549.....	1,300.941
10.....	12.324.....	100.....	123.240.....	1,232.40
11.....	15.135.....	121.....	166.485.....	1,831.33
(12).....	(24.232).....	(144).....		
(13).....	(23.362).....	(169).....		
14.....	17.774.....	196.....	248.836.....	3,483.70
(15).....	(22.869).....	(225).....		
16.....	17.242.....	256.....	275.872.....	4,413.95
17.....	16.422.....	289.....	279.174.....	4,745.96
18.....	19.785.....	324.....	356.130.....	6,410.34
19.....	19.601.....	361.....	372.419.....	7,075.96
20.....	21.893.....	400.....	437.860.....	8,757.20
21.....	21.792.....	441.....	457.632.....	9,610.27
22.....	20.854.....	484.....	458.788.....	10,093.34
23.....	22.13.....	529.....	508.990.....	11,706.77
24.....	22.10.....	576.....	530.400.....	12,729.60
25.....	23.39.....	625.....	584.750.....	14,618.75
26.....	20.42.....	676.....	530.920.....	13,803.92
308.....	354.13.....	5,658.....	5,864.955.....	114,251.05

$$642.90 = 651b$$

$$0.9876 = b$$

$$354.13 = 128.37 + 304.18 + 5.658c \quad (1)$$

$$78.42 = -5.658c$$

$$-0.01386 = c$$

These results are then used as the constants in the standard form equation:

$$y = a + bx + cx^2$$

and substituting gives the line-of-trend equation:

$$y = 6.113 + 0.9876x - 0.01386x^2$$

Appendix II. Calculation of Index of Correlation

In standard form, the equation of Index of Correlation is as follows:

$$i^2yx = \frac{a\sum(y) + b\sum(xy) + c\sum(x^2y) - Nc^2y}{\sum(y)^2 - Nc^2y}$$

where

$$cy = \frac{\sum y}{N} = \frac{354.13}{21}$$

and

$$cy^2 = 284.361$$

Substitution into the standard form of the equation gives:

$$i^2yx = \frac{(6.113 \times 354.13) + (0.988 \times 5,864.99) - (0.0139)(114,251) - (284.361)(21)}{(6,405.3) - (284.361)(21)}$$

This reduces to

$$i^2yx = \frac{2,164.8 + 5,794.6 - 1,588.1 - 5,971.6}{6,405.3 - 5,971.6}$$

$$= \frac{399.7}{433.7} = 0.92$$

$$iyx = 0.97$$

Appendix III. Calculation of Age and Maximum Cost

The age at which cost reaches a maximum and the corresponding figure for cost are calculated by use of the differential calculus.

Differentiating the equation for the base age-cost-per-horsepower-mile relation,

$$y = 6.113 + 0.9876x - 0.01386x^2$$

gives the expression $0.9876 - 0.02772x$ for the slope of the curve which, being equated to 0, gives a value of $x = 35.63$, the age in years at which cost becomes a maximum. Substituting this value of x in the base equation gives a value of $y = 23.71$ cents per 1,000 rail horsepower-miles.

References

1. INDEXES OF RAILROAD MATERIAL PRICES AND WAGE RATES. Association of American Railroads, Washington, D.C.
2. A REAPPRAISAL OF THE ECONOMICS OF RAILWAY ELECTRIFICATION, H. F. BROWN, R. L. KIMBALL. *AIEE Transactions*, pt. II (*Applications and Industry*), vol. 73, Mar. 1954, pp. 35-51.

A Digital Computer Simulation of Single-Track Railroad Operation

R. T. COUPAL
NONMEMBER AIEE

L. L. GARVER
NONMEMBER AIEE

W. R. SMITH
NONMEMBER AIEE

IMPROVED SIGNAL SYSTEMS such as Centralized Traffic Control (CTC) have enabled railroads to move train traffic on a single main track with passing sidings that formerly required two tracks or the general use of train orders and timetable authority. A digital computer program has been designed to aid railroad management in selecting the proper siding locations and signal spacing when considering a CTC system. Using an IBM (International Business Machines Corporation) 650 computer the traffic pattern of up to ten trains operating at one time on a 100-150-mile division of a railroad may be predicted. Initial information stored in the computer memory describes the grades, curve speed restrictions, signal locations, and track layout of the railroad. Also, data for each train are available to the computer. This information includes the number, weight, and type of cars, the power of the locomotive, the origin and destination, and the time of departure.

The program to be described in this paper directs the computer to determine the time of arrival and departure of each

train at each siding or station along the railroad, taking into account the conflicting route requirements. It is also the function of the computer to provide the location of train meets or passes.

As one train reaches its destination the data for another train may be read into the computer so that many trains, representing days of railroad operation, may be studied. Data describing the trains or track layout may be changed easily. This allows the study of railroad operation under the conditions of varying train departure times on a given railroad, or fixed departure times and varying siding locations and signal spacings.

The Digital Computer

For those not familiar with the elements of an IBM 650 computer the following brief description will aid in understanding the terms used in this paper. The electronic digital computer may be visualized as three functional units: a magnetic drum memory, arithmetic unit, and the program register. The magnetic drum memory has a capac-

ity of storing 20,000 digits (numbers 0-9) in groups of 10. Each group with a sign is considered a word, making a total of 2,000 words. A word is located on the drum by a 4-digit address. The arithmetic unit performs multiplication, division, addition, and subtraction. This unit can locate and use information stored in the memory drum without destroying the information. Further, it is capable of placing the results of its computations in the memory. The program register controls the sequence of operations performed by the arithmetic unit. The program register can recognize when the result of any operation is zero or nonzero, plus or minus, and can also examine any digit of a word for an 8 or 9. With these features, logic may be programmed into the computer. The transferring of information from punched cards into the memory and the punching of information from the memory into blank cards is also controlled by the program register. The sequence of instructions interpreted by the program register is called the program.

Paper 60-47, recommended by the AIEE Lane Transportation Committee and approved by the AIEE Technical Operations Department for presentation at the AIEE Winter General Meeting, New York, N. Y., January 31-February 5, 1959. Manuscript submitted February 4, 1959; made available for printing November 20, 1959.

R. T. COUPAL, L. L. GARVER, and W. R. SMITH are with the General Railway Signal Company, Rochester, N. Y.

The authors wish to acknowledge the assistance in obtaining actual railroad drawings and photographs given by the signal department of the Canadian Pacific Railroad. They have also given counsel on actual railroad operating practices and possible means of simulation.

the program necessary to simulate the operation of many trains running on a single track is separated into two parts. The calculation program provides the instructions and data necessary to mathematically predict the speed-time-distance characteristics of any train. With this information the computer may calculate how much time will elapse as a train travels from one portion of the railroad to another. The route logic program provides the computer with a numerical method of visualizing the track layout of a railroad and the positions of the trains. The computer must have available the necessary data and instructions that when two trains conflict, one train may be recalculated into an available track.

CALCULATION PROGRAM

The calculation program provides the speed-time-distance characteristic for each train to be moved over the railroad. This is accomplished by solving the acceleration equation for train acceleration

$$\text{acceleration} = \frac{\text{Locomotive Tractive Effort} - \text{Train Resistance}}{\text{Mass of the Train}}$$

For diesel-electric operation, which has been assumed in this development, the tractive effort is related by a constant to the locomotive horsepower divided by train speed. The train resistance is a function of train speed, car weights, and other factors. For this program the Davis formula and constants are used.¹ The appendix contains a development of the actual formula used. The train resistance is related to the types of cars and their weights, the speed of the train, and the grade and curvature of the track. Therefore data for both the train and the track characteristics are stored in the computer memory. The storage of the train data will be covered later in this paper. The track data contain one entry for each change in grade or curvature, and there are approximately 100 of these changes per mile to be expected on an average railroad. The data for these track sections are stored sequentially in the computer memory with the location necessary for each section of constant grade and curve.

In the 10-digit track data number, three digits represent the acceleration per ton because of the grade in this section, two digits represent the acceleration per ton because of curvature (always negative), and three digits give the length of the section in tens-of-feet. The remaining

Code Number	Name	Represents
00.....	Intermediate.....	single mainline track with no entrance to sidings
02.....	Double Track Intermediate.....	double mainline tracks with no entrances to siding
10.....	Approach.....	single mainline track with a switch to a siding at one end
20.....	Mainline.....	single mainline track adjacent to a siding
30.....	Siding.....	single track siding
50.....	Transition.....	double mainline tracks at the transition from a single mainline track

two digits give a speed limit in miles per hour that may be imposed by the railroad timetable because of such things as a sharp curve, tracks through a city, or a crossing with another railroad.

Using the foregoing train and track data the computer calculates the progress of the train along the railroad. The acceleration available is computed and if a change in velocity is indicated, it is solved by the following formulas

$$V_2 = V_1 + at \quad X = \frac{V_1 + V_2}{2} t$$

where

- a=acceleration available at speed V_1
- V_1 =initial speed
- t=6-second constant acceleration period
- V_2 =speed after the acceleration
- X=distance traveled

No change in velocity is indicated either by zero acceleration available or when the speed is greater than a speed limit but not greater than the speed limit plus 5 miles per hour. The time to travel the next

distance is then calculated by dividing the distance by the speed. Thus the time to travel from one portion of the railroad to another may be calculated for any train.

THE ROUTE LOGIC PROGRAM

The route logic program directs the computer in determining points of train conflicts and sidings where the trains may pass. The signal system on an actual railroad divides the track into sections called signal blocks which may be occupied by only one train. Therefore these signal blocks, actual or proposed, were chosen to be the sections used by the computer to visualize the railroad. Each signal block was assigned one memory location for its data and the sequence of signal blocks determined the sequence of memory locations.

Of the ten digits in each memory location representing a signal block, four digits represent the length of the section in tens-of-feet, four digits indicate the

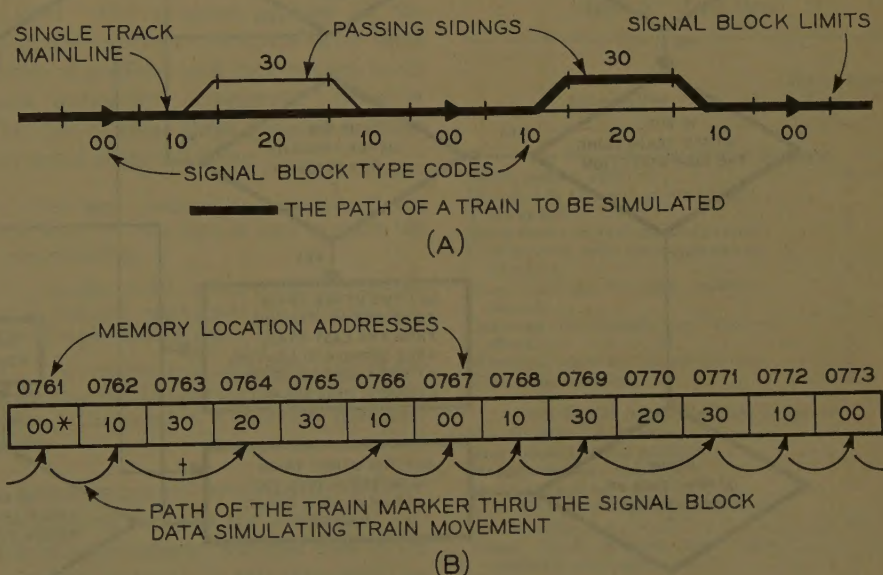


Fig. 1. Method used to simulate train movement

A—Railroad track and signal diagram

B—Computer memory drum representation

* Only the first two of ten digits are shown in each memory location.

† Sections not used by the train are skipped in the memory.

Two 30 sections are used to allow two trains to use the same siding when direction and length permit

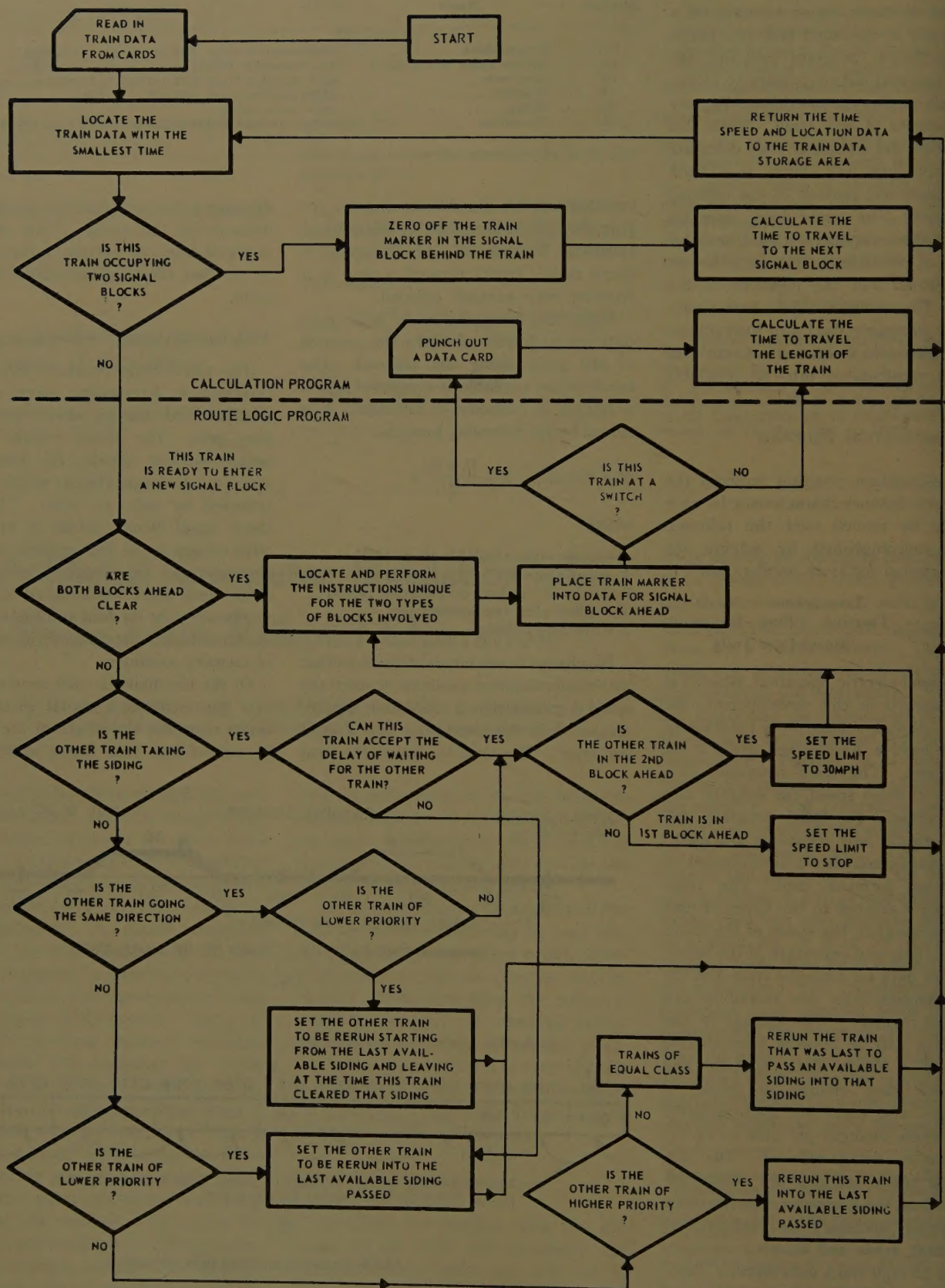


Fig. 2. Flow diagram of computer program for predicting railroad operation

ce of a train in the block, and the
ining two digits indicate the type of
l section. The types of signal sec-
considered in this program and their
numbers are given in Table I.

certain operations have to be performed
he train is calculated from one
l block to another. Many of the
ations are unique to the two types of
ks involved. In order to locate the
ram for these operations, the com-
r is directed to take the first digit of
ype code of the block occupied and
the 2-digit-type code for the block
d of the train. This forms a 2-
number unique for the two signal
ks involved and the direction of travel.
number is added to a master 4-
number to form the address of the
instruction in a subroutine. As an
mple when the computer calculates
a train is preparing to enter an
roach" block from an "intermediate"
k the number 0 and 10 are added to
a 10 and then combined with the
ter number 1300 to give 1310. This
ne address of the first instruction in
subroutine.

s previously mentioned four digits
he signal block data are used to in-
te the presence of a train in that
k. This 4-digit number, termed a
in marker," is the address of the
word of data for the train. The
ts are zeros when no train is in the
k. The data address of a train in
signal data forms one half of a cross
rence so that when given a train
ker the entire data for the train may
located. The other half of the cross
rence is formed by storing with the
n data the address of the signal section
upied. Therefore, given the train data,
signal data for the section occupied
those around it may be located.

o simulate the movement of the train
g the railroad the train markers are
ved from signal block to signal block.
e computer calculates the time at which
train will enter the next signal block
stores it with the train data. When
time is earlier than the times stored
h the other trains, the train marker
placed into the signal block ahead.
e computer then calculates the time
en the last car of the train will clear
block behind. Time, speed, and grade
tion location are stored back with the
in data. When the other trains have
n moved in a similar manner and the
e for this particular train is again the
iest, its train marker in the block
ind is replaced by zeros. Fig. 1
tches the path of a train marker in
representing a train movement. The

sequence of this cycle is repeated as
follows:

1. Enter the train marker in the block and calculate the time when the block behind will be cleared.
2. Move the other trains as required.
3. Zero the block behind and calculate the time to enter the next signal block.
4. Move the other trains and return to 1.

A conflict occurs when two trains try to occupy the same signal block. Rail-
way signals, however, will also detect the
presence of a train in the second block
ahead and on a following move will in-
dicate a 30-mph speed limit for a train
entering the section. This also will con-
stitute a train conflict, especially when a
fast passenger train overtakes a slow
freight train. Therefore the route logic
program directs the computer to test both
the first and second signal blocks ahead of
a train for occupancy. If no train marker
is found, the program continues as de-
scribed in the previous paragraph. The
largest portion of the route logic program
is devoted to instructions directing the
computations when a train marker is
located. The pattern of these instruc-
tions becomes very involved but the
general form may be understood by refer-
ring to Fig. 2.

The important information for this
program was contained in numbers,
called "markers," that could be zero or
nonzero, 8 or 9, and positive or negative.
The train marker used in the signal block
data is one example of a zero or nonzero
marker. The program register of the
computer is able to recognize these three
types of qualities and then branch to its
next instruction accordingly. Some of
the uses of these three types of markers
are listed in the following.

1. The sign, positive or negative, of the first word of train data is used to mark the train direction.
2. Another word in the train data group, when nonzero, marks that the train has conflicted with another train.
3. The number 8 in a specific digit of the train data marks the train as being a freight train. The number 9 marks a passenger train.

Other important information conveyed
by markers includes the answers to the
following questions: Was this train in the
last siding passed? Is this train being re-
run after conflicting with another train?
Is the train in an "Approach" signal block
and preparing to take the siding? These
markers with two allowable states direct
the computer to follow the particular
instructions necessary for any train
conflict and rerunning involved.

Scheduled Delays

The program just described has as-
sumed that all trains would be operated
to travel the railroad in a minimum
amount of time as allowed by locomotive
power and route conflicts. In actual
practice however many trains are re-
quired to stop somewhere along the rail-
road. A local freight train will make
many stops to set off and pick up cars.
A passenger train makes scheduled stops
and at other points has scheduled passing
times. A subprogram is included to
allow the simulation of three types of
delays: a stop for a definite period of time,
a stop for a definite period of time but the
train may not depart until a scheduled
time has passed, and a scheduled entry
time where the train need not stop but it
cannot enter the next block until the
scheduled time has passed. This program
requires the use of a memory location for
each train and the data must be stored in
the computer memory before the calcula-
tion begins.

Train Data

The train data include information for
use in both the calculation program and
route logic program. Ten groups of 20
words each have been reserved in the
memory for train data. This allows ten
trains to be operating on the simulated
railroad at one time. Additional train

Table II. Train Data

Information	No. of Digits Required
For Use in the Calculation Program	
Grade section address.....	4
Distance to the next grade change.....	4
Train speed.....	3
Speed limits (maximum and present).....	4
Braking rate with normal brake ap- plication.....	4
Three constants for train resistance formula.....	10
Constant for locomotive tractive effort.....	6
Minimum speed for full horsepower.....	3
Next delay location.....	8
For Use in the Route Logic Program	
The direction of travel.....	sign
Train identification number.....	3
Priority number and type.....	2
Train marker for this train.....	4
Time for next change in signal block occupancy.....	4
Signal block address that train marker is occupying.....	8
Conflict marker.....	10
Length of the train in feet.....	4
The address and time of clearing past the last siding.....	8
The grade section and distance to go at the last siding.....	8
The same information for the 2nd to last siding passed.....	16
Train being rerun marker.....	1
In approach taking siding.....	1
Been in siding.....	1

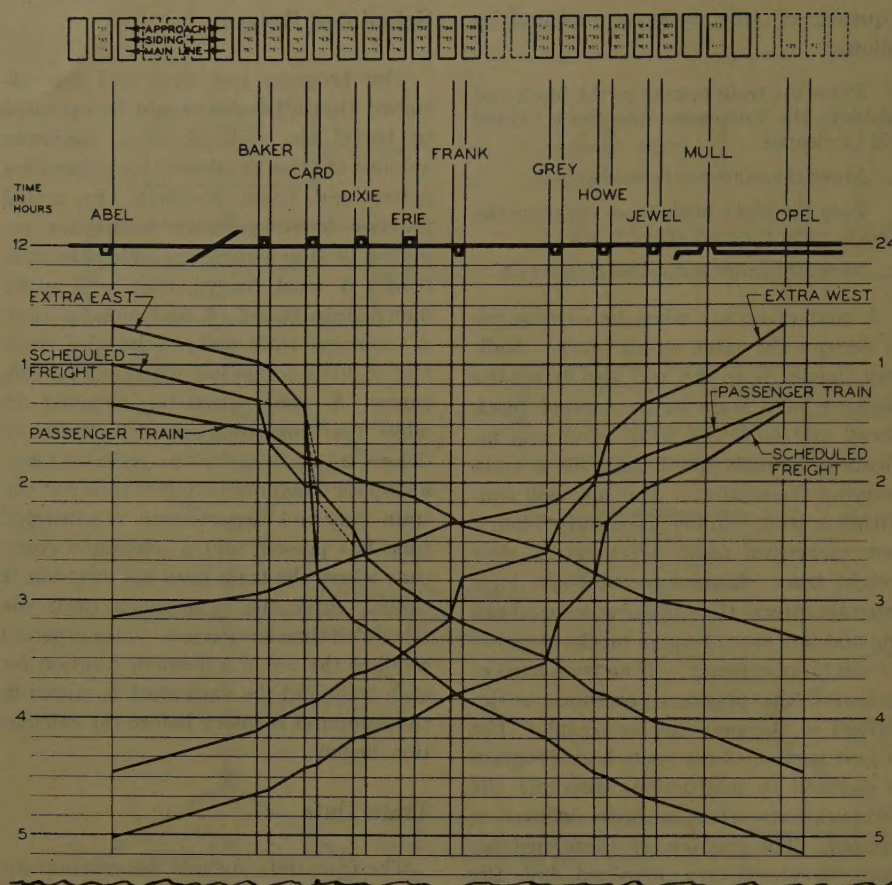


Fig. 3. Train graph predicted for the Trenton Division, Canadian Pacific Railroad

— Predicted traffic pattern
 --- Calculations made but superseded by a rerun because of train conflicts

data may be read from cards into an area made available when a train completes its run. This allows days of operation to be studied without continually stopping the computer. Table II is a list of the information contained in the train data area and the number of digits required.

Answer Cards

Answer cards are punched by the computer each time it calculates a train passed the entrance or exit to a siding. These cards contain the train identification number as originally assigned in the input data, the addresses of the two signal blocks the train marker is occupying, the time the front end of train passes the switch, and the conflict marker which is normally zero but will contain a train marker when the train is being rerun into a siding for a meet or pass.

The information on these answer cards may be plotted to give the time-distance graph, called a train graph, of the simulated railroad operation. It is these train graphs, such as shown in Fig. 3, which aid railroad management in choosing the siding locations best suited to their traffic needs or show the effect of re-

scheduling trains on an existing track layout.

Conclusions

This program is offered as an aid to railroad management for evaluating the effects of possible changes in right-of-way, signal equipment or train schedules. The major advantage of the computer is its ability to locate the points of conflict before having to make a routing decision. This allows the horsepower per ton, grade and curve, and speed restrictions to have full effect in determining where meets will be made.

New data for a complete change in track and signal layout may be prepared from blueprints in one-half day. Train data such as departing time may be changed in a few minutes. Using the IBM 650 computer approximately 8 minutes are required to calculate one of many trains over 100 miles of railroad. The program offers a relatively easy method to evaluate many proposed changes in either the right-of-way or the operating schedule without the expense and difficulty involved in actual field tests.

The Davis formula for railroad freight car rolling resistance is:

$$R = 1.3 + \frac{29}{W} + kV + \frac{CAV^2}{Wn}$$

where

R = resistance, pounds/ton
 W = average weight per axle, tons
 k = constant depending upon equipment
 V = speed, miles/hour
 C = constant depending upon equipment
 A = effective cross-sectional area, square feet
 n = total number of axles

The actual values for the constants mentioned may be found in reference 1, page 69.

Combining this equation in the following equation

$$F = 100Wa + RW + 20PW + 0.8DW$$

and solving for acceleration

$$a = \frac{F}{100W} - \frac{R}{100} - 0.2P - 0.008D$$

where

a = acceleration, miles/hour/second
 F = force of the locomotive, pounds
 $100W$ = effective mass including inertial effect of rotating wheels
 R = train resistance as given by the Davis formula
 P = per-cent grade of the track
 D = degrees curvature of the track

The force of the locomotive may be solved for by the equation

$$F = \frac{375(HP)0.8}{V^*}$$

where

F = force of the locomotive available after overcoming train resistance in pounds
 HP = rated horsepower of the locomotive
 V^* = train speed or minimum speed for maximum horsepower, whichever is larger

The minimum speed for maximum horsepower is considered to be the speed at which the locomotive tractive effort is equal to 25% of the weight of the locomotive on driving axles.

Reference

1. TRAIN RESISTANCE OF FREIGHT TRAINS UNDER VARIOUS CONDITIONS OF LOADING AND SPEED. *Proceedings, American Railway Engineering Association*, Chicago, Ill., vol. 42, 1941, pp. 69-86.

Discussion

I. H. Cole (Canadian National Railway, Montreal, Que., Canada): The Canadian National Railways (CNR) are implementing a program of siding extensions and centralized traffic control on about 4,500 miles of their transcontinental single-track line. The requirement is to do it economically. A computer program has been written

650 data processing equipment to state train dispatching by CTC on the track and it provides a very convenient method for comparing various alternatives and for deciding on the most suitable for the job.

The logic in the computer program has been developed from a detailed analysis of dispatching in CTC territory; major emphasis has been laid on simulating the train dispatchers' decisions. In this respect, there is a radical difference between the simulation of train dispatching developed by the General Railway Signal Company and that developed by the CNR. For example, in the General Railway Signal Company's simulation, opposing trains are allowed to progress to the point where a collision between them is inevitable. Then, a post-mortem analysis is held to decide on what should have been done in the first instance to have avoided the situation and, as a result of the post-mortem one of the trains is moved back while the other is allowed to proceed. But the logic associated with moving a train back is very difficult to formulate when the move entangles

with other trains that were following it. In the CNR's logic, on the other hand, the imminence of conflicts between trains are foreseen and steps are taken to resolve them consistent with the aim of moving the traffic safely and expeditiously; in fact, this is as it happens in practice and the results of our simulation approximate very closely to train dispatching by human operators.

The basis of the CNR's method of analyzing the traffic capacity of a single track on an IBM 650 digital computer, is, first the computer is programmed to prepare the ideal train time-lines for a typical week's traffic (a train's ideal time-line is its distance travelled versus elapsed time when the train occupies its own track): this is how the traffic would move when, in the ideal case there is no interference between trains. The running times of the trains involved are obtained from the results of their on-line performance or from performance calculations with a high-speed digital computer. Next, the computer is programmed to resolve the conflicts between the ideal time-lines for the sidings combination under test,

in accordance with agreed rules for the movement of traffic. These rules take account of the relative train priorities as well as the time-in-hand of trains relative to their published schedules. Lastly, a supplemental program compares the "resolved" time lines with their ideal counterparts and calculates the amount of interference that resulted from moving the prevailing traffic with the particular sidings combination under test.

The program previously referred to occupies about 3,000 locations of a 4,000-word magnetic drum. It is quite fast and takes about 90 minutes of computer time to process a week's traffic, consisting of 150 trains, over a single track with 20 sidings.

R. T. Coupal, L. L. Garver, and W. R. Smith: Mr. Cole's discussion of the program which has been developed by CNR shows another method of analysis of the problem. Since we know very little about the actual operation of their program we cannot intelligently compare the two programs.

French Technical Advances in the Field of Railroad Electrification

F. NOUVION
NONMEMBER AIEE

THE FRENCH NATIONAL Railroads network, of standard gage track, comprises more than 39,500 kilometers (km) or almost 25,000 miles of route. The French Railroad Companies were nationalized on January 1938, and immediately thereafter efforts were made to modernize them.

Regarding the "traffic unit" as a comparison on an equivalent basis of passenger-km and tons-km, from 1949 to 1958 freight and passenger traffic increased 70 billion to 85 billion traffic units. During the same period the number of railroad employees decreased from 465,000 to 360,000, bringing the traffic units per man hour from 60 to 100.

The modernization of the French Railroads embodies mainly the electrification of certain lines and the conversion of steam to diesel operations. Table I gives comparative figures for the years 1939 and 1958.

60-602, recommended by the AIEE Land Transportation Committee and approved by the AIEE Technical Operations Department for presentation at the AIEE-ASME Railroad Conference, Pittsburgh, Pa., April 20-21, 1960. Manuscript submitted January 19, 1960; made available for printing March 25, 1960.

NOUVION is with the French National Railroads, Paris, France.

At present, on the Société Nationale des Chemins de Fer Français (SNCF), there are 4,000 miles of electrified route, representing 16% of the total route mileage and 50% of the total traffic. At the end of 1963, 4,700 route-miles or 18% of the total route-mileage should be electrified and 63% of the total traffic will then be handled by electricity. From the standpoint of energy, the advantages of electrification are considerable: high efficiency, possibility of using power derived from domestic sources, particularly from power stations employing hydraulic energy or blast furnace gases.

Fig. 1 shows that the railroad consumption is steady during the day. In 1958, 34% of our energy was consumed during off-peak hours; on a national basis the traction energy to total energy ratio remains low and practically constant despite electrification.

Fig. 2 summarizes the relative efficiencies for the various types of motive power. Today, electric traction leads and will continue to do so increasingly. Energy consumption per ton hauled is low. The following figures, recorded on our North-Eastern lines, show the average consumption per gross ton-km hauled:

1955—19.6 watt-hours
1956—20.9 watt-hours
1957—22.3 watt-hours
1958—21.5 watt-hours

In 1945, 2,200 route-miles had been electrified at 1,500-volts direct current, the standard system in France since 1923. The SNCF has improved this system to a high degree, as evidenced by the railroad world speed record established on March 28 and 29, 1955, during which a speed of 204 mph (miles per hour) was attained. These d-c passenger locomotives are given class repair every 750,000 miles.

From a technical point of view, one could have been satisfied with the results of the 1,500-volt d-c electrification, but this solution appeared to be too expensive, therefore a more economical system was sought. There were two other very well known solutions in the world: the 3,000-volt d-c and the low-frequency a-c systems—16 $\frac{2}{3}$ and 25 cps (cycles per second).

The low-frequency current could not be considered because it requires special frequency high-voltage lines which are

Table I. Performances of the Different Forms of Traction

	Millions Train-Miles
	1939 1958
Steam.....	230.....130
Electric.....	43.....110
Diesel rail car.....	23.....78
Total.....	296.....318

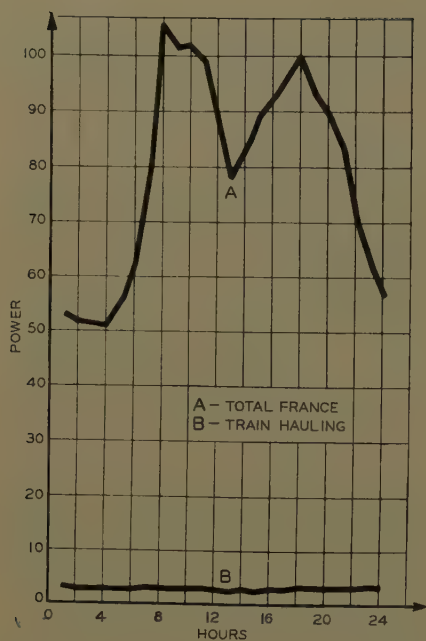


Fig. 1. Hourly variation of power consumption

not justified in any event; therefore only the 3,000-volt d-c system or some other new system remained.

The 3,000-volt d-c electrification was studied carefully and was given up since, in this system, the locomotives had proved to be much inferior to our 1,500-volt d-c locomotives. Fig. 3 shows the comparative speed-tractive-effort curves of two CC locomotives from the same manufacturer.

One point will be sufficient to indicate why we could not consider using 3,000-volt direct current to haul, for instance, the Mistral train: instead of one BB of 80 tons, we would have required two CC 3,000-volt d-c locomotives.

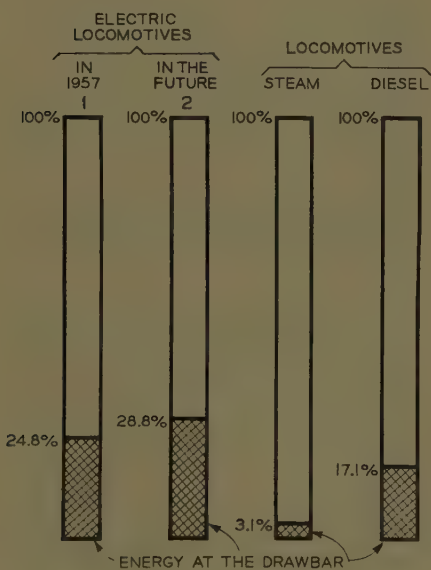


Fig. 2. Relative efficiencies

Since we could not be satisfied with any of the existing systems of electrification, we turned to the study of the 50-cps single-phase system, and all the calculations that were made in 1955 have proved that the single-phase traction at industrial frequency was producing a saving of 25% in first costs, and 7% on yearly expenses, over the 3,000-volt d-c system.

Since then, single-phase traction has been much improved while d-c traction has undergone only minor improvements.

Fixed Facilities

HIGH-VOLTAGE LINES

With the d-c system two transmission lines usually run parallel to the railroad tracks in order to feed the substations, i.e., the length of the high-voltage lines is twice that of the track.

With single-phase 25 kv, the distance between substations is such that they can be installed either at the existing high-voltage distribution substation locations, or close to these locations.

For instance, on the Valenciennes-Thionville line, out of 220 route-miles, less than 5 miles of high-voltage feeder have been installed.

SUBSTATIONS

Although we have considerably reduced the size of our d-c substations, they still remain much more complex than the a-c substations.

Moreover, since the a-c substations are less numerous, the advantage of the single-phase system is obvious. The ratio of costs can be evaluated at better than 3 to 1 in favor of single-phase alternating current. The distance between these single-phase substations ranges from 25 to 50 miles.

CATENARY

Here again, the catenaries are provided with less copper, about half of what is needed with 3,000-volt direct current. Therefore the single-phase catenary is less costly than the direct current to the extent of approximately 20% in first cost.

Our a-c catenary is made of a bronze tin bearing messenger of 0.10075 in. (inch)² and a hard copper contact wire of 0.1658 in.²; see Fig. 4. The total cross sectional area is equivalent to 0.2265 in.² of copper.

Fig. 5 shows overhead line feeders. Only one circuit breaker per direction is provided, the sectionalizing being carried out by remotely controlled switches located in wayside switching stations.

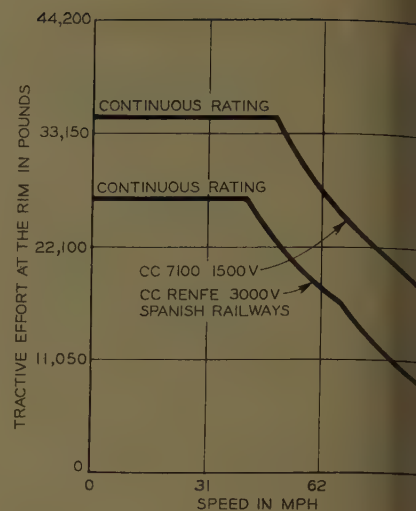


Fig. 3. 1,500-volt and 3,000-volt locomotives

HARMONICS AND UNBALANCED LOADS

It should be pointed out that, from the beginning, the problem of harmonics did not give us any difficulty, although rectifier locomotives are operated on all of our newly electrified lines.

Experience has proved that current harmonics do not aggravate the current unbalance by more than 10%; as for voltage harmonics, experience has proved them not to be a trouble on the French high-voltage networks. Furthermore, the measured harmonics are almost of the same value in a-c and d-c systems equipped with rectifier substations (see Fig. 6). The unbalance must be examined for each substation. The current unbalance is generally of no importance because of the number of generators connected to the network. The acceptable voltage unbalance should be no more than 3% for a permanent unbalance, or 5% for a temporary unbalance. After study of this unbalance, the single-phase connection or, if necessary, the Scott connection can be chosen, because the power of the feeding network is always increasing.

At the beginning of the single-phase electrification, we were always fearful of some unbalances; therefore, we provided numerous substations with Scott connections. Now, on the completed, or under completion, North-Eastern network, we shall have only five substations with Scott connection, out of a total of 43.

VERTICAL AND HORIZONTAL CLEARANCES

Electrification requires the provision of clearances between structures (tunnels, arch, glass roof, iron fittings, etc.) and live electrical parts.

The clearances required for 25

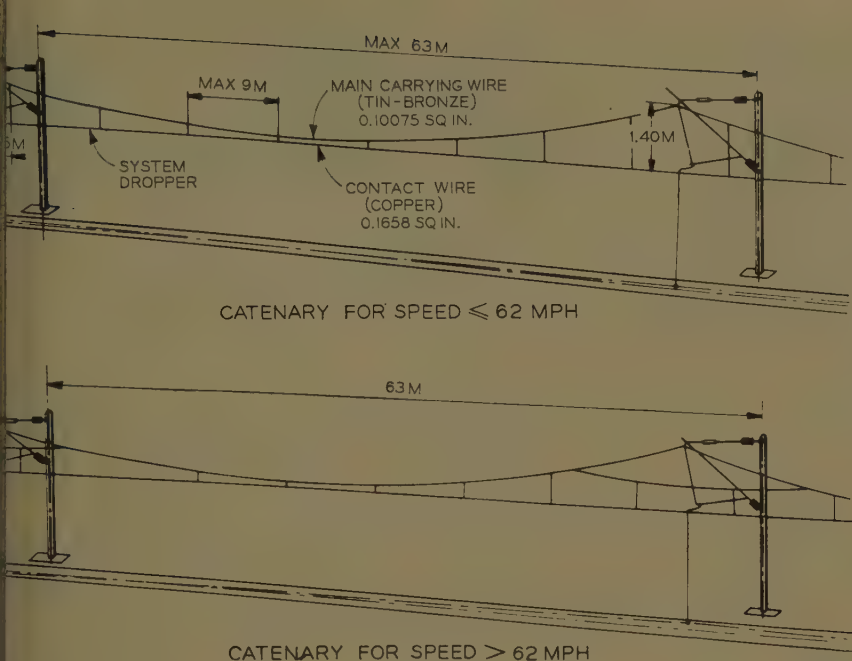


Fig. 4. 25-kv single-phase catenary

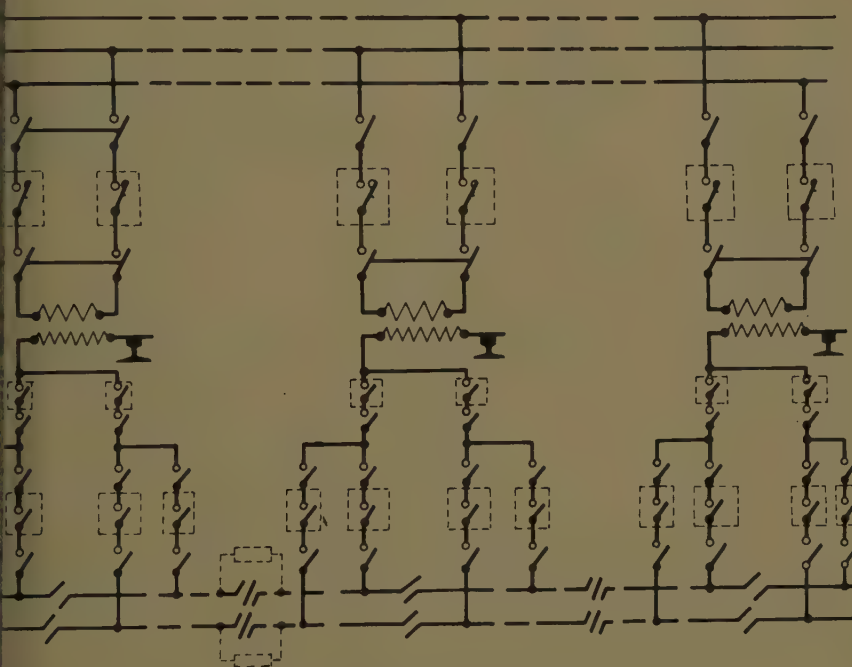


Fig. 5. Single-phase substation

HARMONICS NUMBER	SINGLE PHASE RECTIFIER				SIX PHASE RECTIFIER	
	1 THEORETICAL CASE OF SQUARE WAVE PRIMARY CURRENT	2 ACTUAL CASE WITH WELL SMOOTHED CURRENT	3 ACTUAL CASE WITH NORMAL PULSATION (FROM TEST BENCH)	4 BRITISH RAILWAYS TESTS (ON PRIMARY SIDE OF SUBSTATION)	5 THEORETICAL CASE	6 ACTUAL VALUES FOR AN INDUCTIVE VOLTAGE DROP OF 3 TO 45% (COMMITTEE NO. 22 OF THE C.M.I.)
3	33.3	FROM 26 TO 28.5	FROM 21.7 TO 22.5	20	0	
5	20	FROM 12.5 TO 15.5	FROM 10.4 TO 10.7	8.55	20	FROM 16.6 TO 18.66
7	14.3	FROM 8 TO 9.6	FROM 5.6 TO 6.6	5.25	14.3	FROM 11.2 TO 12.1
9	11	FROM 7 TO 6.6	FROM 3.4 TO 4.5	3.20	0	
11	9.1	FROM 3.3 TO 4.4	FROM 2.2 TO 2.9	2.20	9	FROM 4.7 TO 6.37
13	7.7	FROM 2 TO 2.9	FROM 1.6 TO 1.9	1.85	7.7	FROM 3.1 TO 4.23
15	6.7	FROM 1 TO 2	FROM 1.1 TO 1.07	1	0	
17	5.9	FROM 0.5 TO 1.4	FROM 0.9 TO 0.66	0.65	5.9	FROM 1.4 TO 2.12
PERCENTAGE VALUE OF THE FIRST HARMONICS	45.5%	FROM 31% TO 35%	FROM 25% TO 26%	23%	28%	FROM 21% TO 23.5%

Fig. 6. Harmonics

and 3 kv according to International Union of Railway specifications are as follows:

	25 Kv. In.	3 Kv. In.
Between catenary and loads.....	11.417	8.661
Between live electrical parts (catenary or pantograph) and earth		
Vertically.....	8.661*	10.630†
Horizontally.....	6.693*	10.630†

* Short period.

† During extended period.

On open track, it is always easy to comply with the clearance requirements, but this is not the case under bridges and in tunnels. Generally, the central part of the tunnel arch is well suited for installation of insulator attachments.

As shown in Fig. 7, it is necessary sometimes to widen the arch of the tunnel at the height of the pantograph "horns," but it is at this point that the additional insulation required between 25 kv and 3 kv is the smallest (2¾ in. for short periods).

The insulated pantograph horns minimize, and in some instances may avoid, the necessity of widening the arch. Fig. 8 shows the schematic arrangement applied on all 25-kv pantograph bows of the SNCF and the increase in clearance allowed by utilization of insulated horns. It seems certain that the use of new insulating materials will permit a further reduction in the clearance requirements.

TELECOMMUNICATIONS

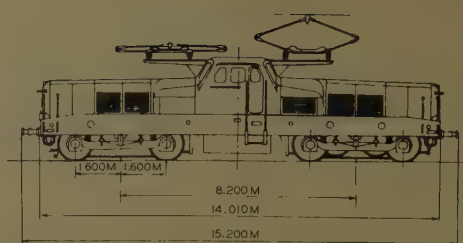
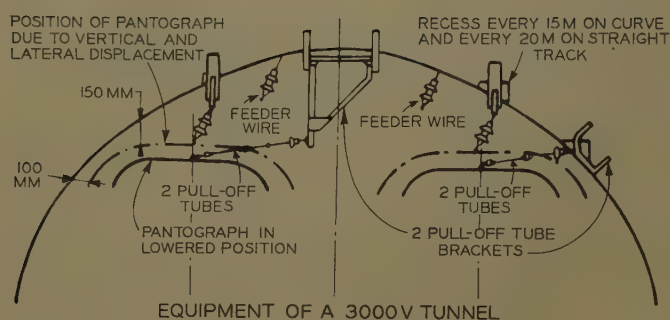
In France, whether we electrify or not, telecommunication circuits are put in cables in order to improve the quality of telephone communications.

Rolling Stock

Are industrial frequency locomotives inferior to d-c locomotives? At first we thought so, but in fact we encountered pleasant surprises: the locomotives with static current convention outclass the conventional d-c locomotives.

Experiments have been made with all types of locomotives: with the synchronous d-c converter, the single-phase 3-phase converter, and the single-phase commutator motors. None of them can compete with the overwhelming superiority of the mercury-arc rectifier locomotive. Therefore, I shall speak only of the latter, of which there are three types in France:

Series BB 12000 (1954), of which 113 are in service and 35 on order



WEIGHT : 84 TONS
POWER : 3,360 HP AT 47.5 KM/HR
EFFORT AT THE RIM : 19 TONS
MAXIMUM SPEED : 75 MPH - 120 KM/HR

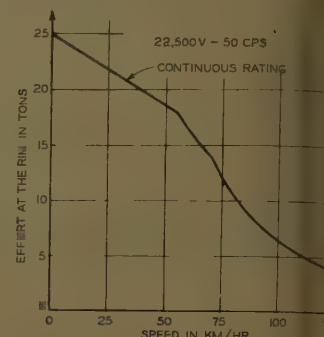
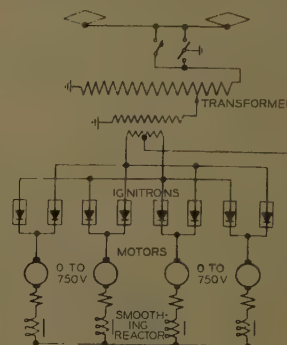


Fig. 9. BB 12000 ignitron locomotives

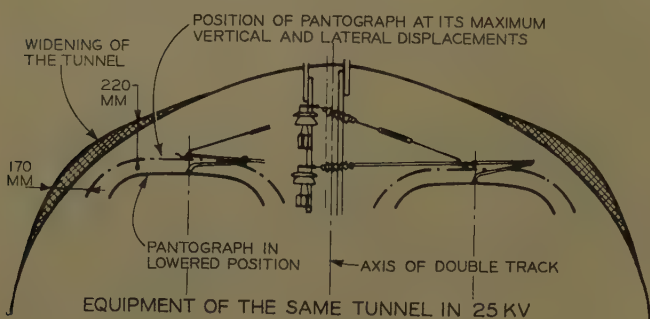


Fig. 7. Tunnel clearances

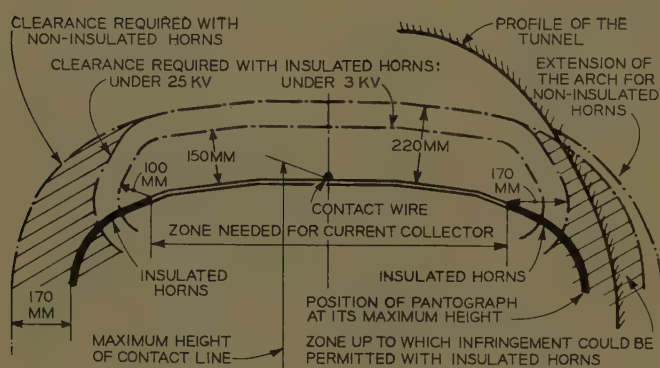


Fig. 8. Insulation of the pantograph horns

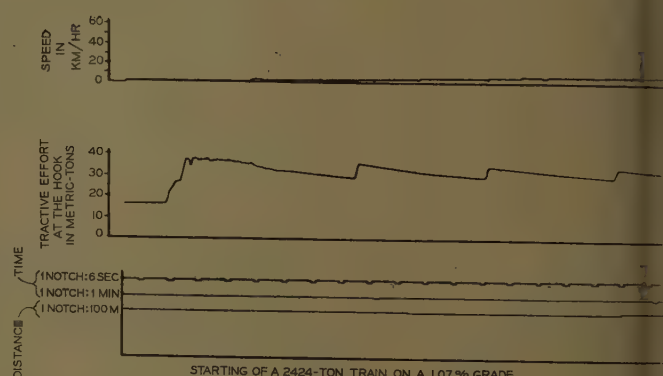


Fig. 10. Locomotive BB 12006

Series BB 16000 (1958), of which 37 are in service and 14 on order

Series BB 16500 (1958), of which 43 are in service and 162 on order

BB 12000 IGNITRON LOCOMOTIVES

These locomotives weigh 185,000 lb (pound) and deliver 3,360 hp (horsepower) in continuous rating; see Fig. 9. They are capable of hauling 1,656 metric tons on a 1.08% grade and 2,800 metric tons on a 0.5% grade.

In 1956 and 1957, we carried out a series of systematic adhesion tests on a BB 12000 and obtained a starting coefficient of adhesion of 47.5%.

On a single-phase locomotive, with all traction motors connected in parallel, the speed variation of one of them does not affect the others in case of slipping. As for the slipping axle, with motor fed under constant voltage, its normal tractive-effort-speed characteristics is kept, while

slipping. Whether slipping is caused by insufficient adhesion or by a sudden increase of tractive effort, the slipping will cease when the tractive effort and the rail-wheel friction balance each other.

On the contrary, when an axle begins to slip on a d-c locomotive where, in starting position, all motors are connected in series, once the slipping has started the difference between tractive and resistive effort increases, the slipping speed steadily accelerates, and, very quickly, the motor starts to race.

We went very far in heavy load starting tests. Fig. 10 shows the starting effort curve of a 2,424-metric-ton train, which the BB 12006 locomotive started twice on a 1.07% grade.

Furthermore, it is quite certain that the electric part is not the only one concerned in the remarkable results obtained with our ignitron locomotives, as the low traction arrangement on these locomotives

reduces the weight transfer to a minimum; see Fig. 11.

BB 16000 IGNITRON LOCOMOTIVES

These locomotives haul fast heavy passenger trains over the Paris-Lille line and will do it later on the Paris-Strasbourg line. They deliver 4,920 hp, in continuous rating, and weigh 185,000 lb. Their maximum speed is 100 mph; see Fig. 12.

Their characteristics enable them to haul, at 74.5 mph, a 1,000-metric-ton train on a 0.5% grade. Besides, these locomotives

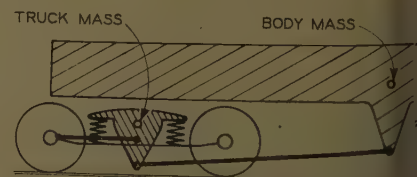


Fig. 11. Low-traction arrangement

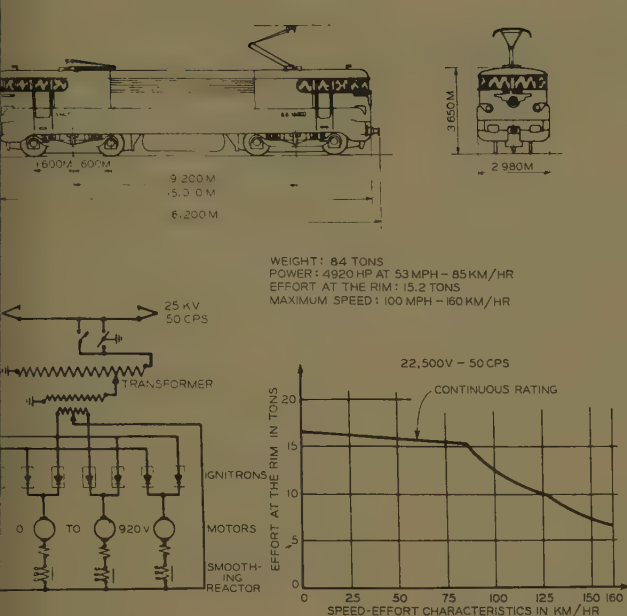


Fig. 12. BB 16000 ignitron locomotives

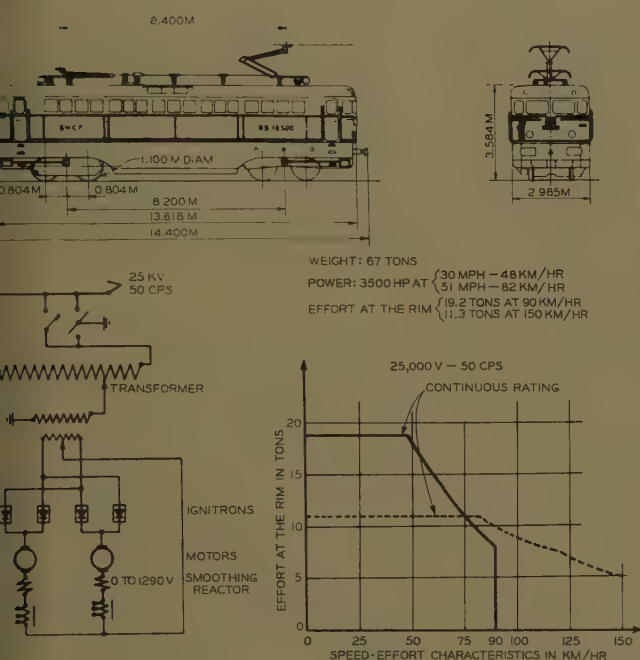


Fig. 13. BB 16500 ignitron locomotives

motives maintain a speed of 100 mph on level tangent track with an 800-ton train; they haul the fastest trains in France at 125 mph between Arras and Longueau.

BB 16500 IGNITRON LOCOMOTIVES

These locomotives weigh 147,700 lb and have a continuous rating of 3,500 hp; see Fig. 13.

They are the most economical among the general purpose electric locomotives, thanks to the development of technical innovations which produce a remarkable locomotive, using a new formula. Our ideas led:

1. For the first time, to the realization of mass-produced trucks with only one traction motor.
2. Also, for the first time, to the utilization of a gear shift (Fig. 14), permitting a change over—within a few minutes—from a freight into a passenger locomotive. For freight traffic the maximum speed is 56 mph and for passenger traffic, it is 93.5 mph.

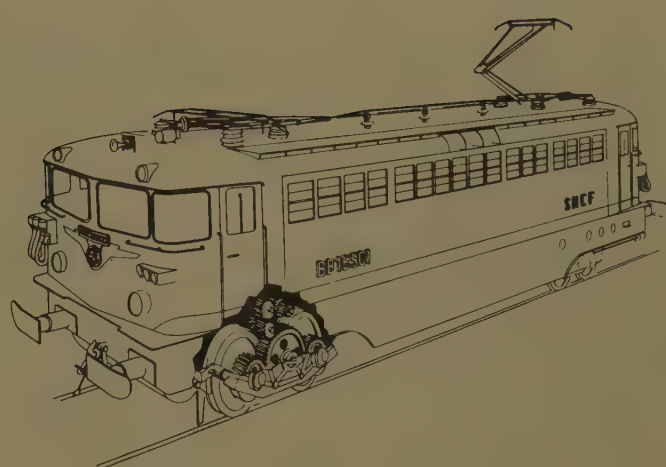


Fig. 14. BB 16500 gear shifting

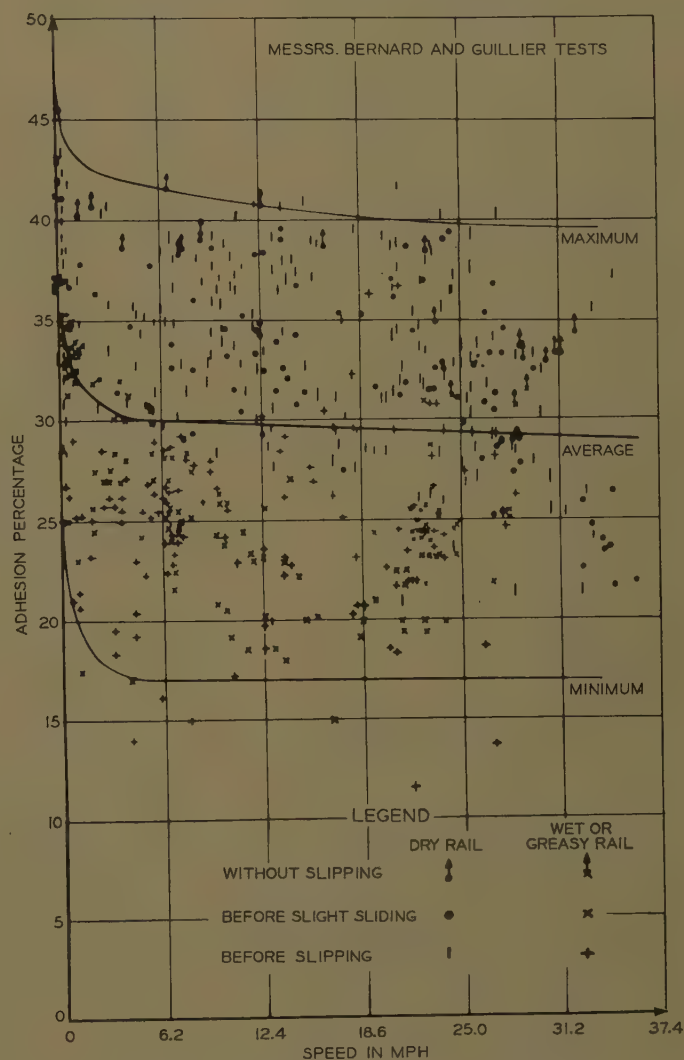


Fig. 15. BB 16500 adhesion tests without sanding

The over-all results obtained by Messrs. Bernard and Guillier during the adhesion tests, carried out on several BB 16500 locomotives, without sanding, on straight and curved tracks, on dry, wet, and greasy rails, are shown in Fig. 15.

It is seen that the average curve starts from about 36% adhesion at speed zero,

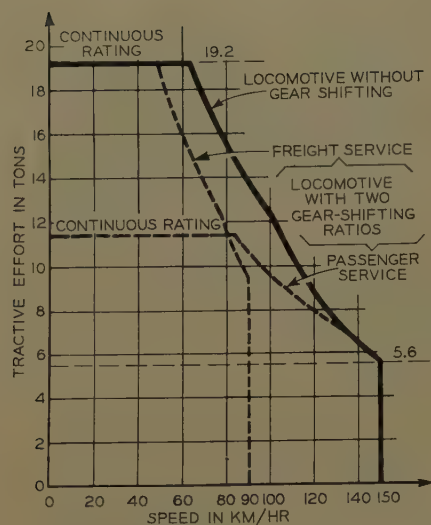


Fig. 16. Advantage of gear shifting

decreases to 30% at a speed of 6 mph, and still remains at 29% at a speed of 31 mph. The top curve shows that the best values are about 40% at a speed of 25 mph.

The results with BB 16500 locomotives equipped with single-motor trucks seem to be 20% better than those obtained with VB 12000 locomotives, particularly at high speeds.

A proof of the exceptional adhesion qualities found by the SNCF for single-phase locomotives with current conversion is that the weight of the locomotives built has steadily decreased each succeeding year, as shown here:

1952—256,000 lb
1953—243,000 lb
1954—185,000 lb
1955—174,000 lb
1957—161,000 lb
1958—161,000 lb
1959—143,000 lb

Practically, for the BB 16500, we have taken a coefficient of adhesion of 36%, at starting.

To build a conventional locomotive with the same performances, we would have had to install equipment of 4,500 hp; see Fig. 16. The single motor per truck and the gear shift enable us to save 960 hp and 13 tons of weight, and in addition, to improve the electrical efficiency of the locomotive.

The tonnage rating of the BB 16500 locomotives is as follows:

Freight.....2,490 metric tons on a 0.5% grade
(Common rolling stock).....1,830 metric tons on a 0.8% grade
1,525 metric tons on a 1.0% grade
Passenger.....900 metric tons on level track at 86 mph

As to passenger trains hauled with the BB 16500 locomotives, let me just point

out that the trip Paris-Lille is made with a 606-ton train, composed of 13 cars, at an average speed of 79 mph.

MAINTENANCE

Our locomotives are available 90% of the time. Experience enables us to state that, for 1,500-volt d-c and a-c locomotives, maintenance expenses per mile are practically the same. Table II presents the maintenance expenses of the single-phase BB 12000 and the d-c BB 8100 locomotives in 1957, both engines used for freight and passenger traffic.

ADHESION

Research in different directions is being carried on further to improve the adhesion and take advantage of the lightening of our locomotives. For instance, instead of sanding, our studies are aimed at eliminating foreign materials between rail and wheel (water, oil film, greasy material, etc...), which cause losses of adhesion.

These results may be obtained by different means: 1. cleaning of the rail by mechanical processes and 2. electrical sparking. Besides, this latter process removes the gases absorbed by the metals on the surface, which is an important cause for the reduction of the metal-to-metal adhesion. The coefficients of adhesion obtained in the laboratory by this means are remarkably high and promise good results for experimental operation.

We know now how to improve the adhesion of d-c locomotives, which has been poor, due mostly to:

The starting rheostat which flattens the tractive-effort-speed characteristics.

The series-coupling of motors at starting, hence the uncertainty of the voltage at the terminals of each motor.

Nowadays, in all instances, we install the starting rheostat at the head of the circuit and provide parallel starting.

In addition, our work is directed towards two objectives: 1. Research on a device which detects slipping. We have fitted each axle with a tachometer-alternator. The sensitiveness of this device, equipped

Table II. Comparative Maintenance Expenses

	BB 12000	BB 8100
	25 Kv 50 Cps	1,500-Volt D-C
Inspection and daily maintenance		
Labor in hours/1,000 miles	13.3	13.1
Labor and material new francs/mile.....	0.22	0.223
Inspection, daily maintenance, and class repair		
Labor and material new francs/mile.....	0.44	0.436

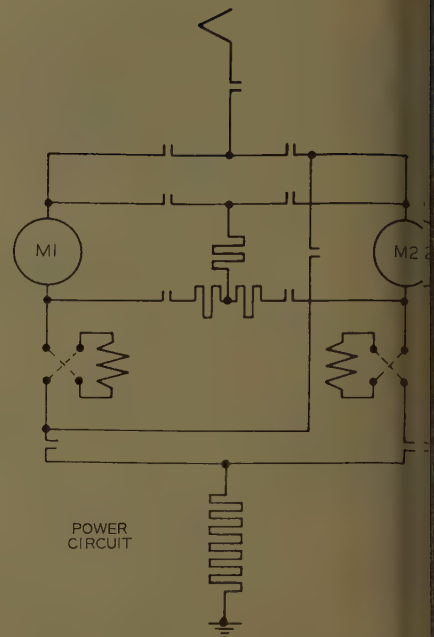


Fig. 17. BB 9401 1,500-volt d-c locomotive

with an electronic amplifier, reaches differential speed of 1.5 mph. 2. Research on antislip electric circuits using physical means of spontaneous action, in order to oppose slipping.

In accordance with the locomotive wiring, the devices developed intervene either permanently, or momentarily. We tried with success:

1. To prevent slipping by shunting the traction motor armature. In case one motor slips during series-coupling, a resistance is automatically connected in parallel with the armature. Therefore, the current of the faulty motor is diverted and its torque decreases, while it is stabilized on the other motors. The shunted motor works practically on separate excitation and the absorption of the slipping is fast.

2. To initiate an antislip action with a balancing resistive bar, which has the effect of maintaining the voltage at the terminals of the slipping armature and of reinforcing its field.

Our 1,500-volt d-c lightweight BB 9400 locomotives, the first unit of which was put into service during the summer of 1959, benefit from those improvements. 116 locomotives of this type have been ordered. They weigh 132,000 lb and deliver 2,900 hp in continuous rating, with a maximum speed of 80 mph. They are equipped with single-motor trucks; the starting rheostat is eliminated, not by using multiple contactors as in conventional solutions, but by providing a tap-changer of only 4 contactors in air. Fig. 17 gives the basic layout of the locomotive; the armature-shunt resistance used in series coupling and the balancing resistive bar used in parallel coupling are shown.

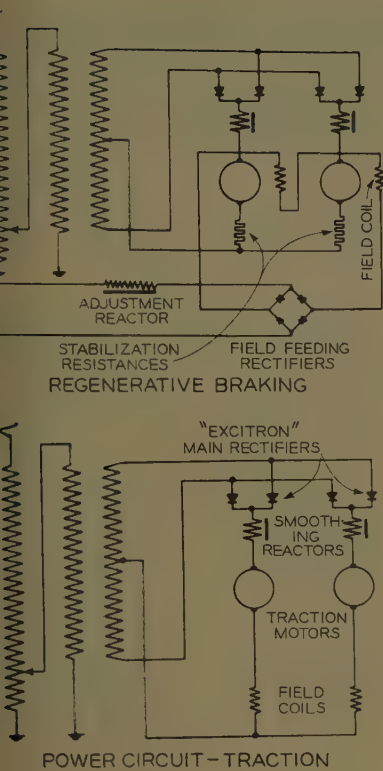


Fig. 18 (left). BB 16500 excitron locomotives

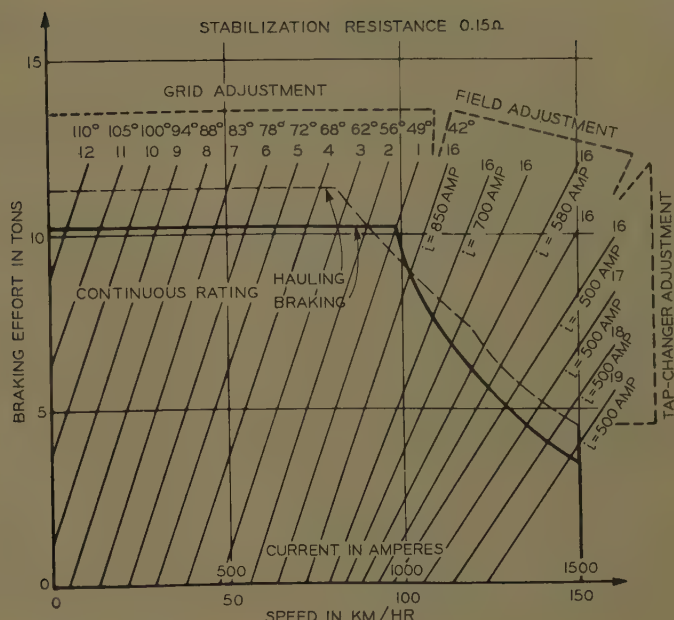


Fig. 19 (right). BB 16500 excitron locomotives

We are modifying our present 1,500-volt locomotives in accordance with these standards because our tests showed that an 80-ton locomotive is able to perform the service of a 107-ton CC with conventional diagram.

GEAR SHIFTING

We have shown the advantages of locomotives equipped with gear shifting. Could the gear shifting be made while running, or should the locomotive be required to stop?

The gear shifting in a running position leads to complicated and expensive mechanical devices. The small number of additional advantages procured do not justify, for the time being its adoption in mass production. However, it might be interesting to test a prototype.

IGNITRONS, EXCITRONS, GERMANIUM, SILICON

There are in service, or on order, 318 locomotives equipped with 2070 ignitron tubes of 8, 10, and 12 inches diameter. Also on order are 50 BB 16500 locomotives equipped with excitrons fitted for

regenerative braking. Fig. 18 gives the schematic diagram of these locomotives in running and regenerative braking conditions. Fig. 19 shows the tractive-effort-speed characteristics in regenerative braking position.

Of course, we are interested in semiconductors, and our 5,000-hp BB 20103, equipped with silicon power rectifiers, is by far the most spectacular application on rolling stock. But if the simplicity, safety of operation, and maintenance are considered, we believe mercury arc rectifiers are technically more advisable than semiconductors at this time. Semiconductors have the reputation of outclassing the mercury arc rectifiers. It is hoped that this appreciation will hold true in the future. But for us, semiconductors have not yet been perfected for mass applications, even if the purchasing price is not taken into consideration. Of course our opinion, which reflects the present situation, will change when technical progress has overcome our objections.

World Fame of French Electric Traction Technique

The efforts, the research, and the bold achievements of France in industrial fre-

quency electrification have had great repercussions, and the SNCF is proud to have played a leading part in the development of the 50-cps system.

Industrial frequency electric traction has been adopted by many countries where all kinds of traffic, all kinds of tracks (narrow, standard, broad gage), and furthermore all types of climates are encountered. According to the specifications, the same equipment has to work under temperatures ranging from -58 to $+113$ degrees Fahrenheit. Having seen our achievements, Great Britain, India, Japan, Luxemburg, Portugal, Turkey, and Russia, have undertaken industrial frequency electrifications. China and Russia have ordered French locomotives.

In India, the SNCF had the honor of being chosen as technical associate to the railroads of this large country, for the first stage of a huge electrification program.

The SNCF is proud of its achievements and is certain that it can continue its good performance and maintain its good reputation. As always, new ideas will be welcomed from every quarter, as long as they seem to us to advance the electrification program, because we believe above all in an impartial approach in improving the technique.

Discussion

G. McClean (General Motors Corporation, La Grange Park, Ill.): Mr. Nouvion's interesting paper is a valuable contribution to our knowledge of railway electrification, and its report of the locomotive developments is particularly stimulating.

The term traffic unit as used is the sum

of freight ton kilometers and passenger kilometers. Is there a factor which could be used to convert passenger kilometers to ton kilometers? The statistics would then be of greater international comparative value if expressed as total ton kilometers to permit the derivations of traffic densities.

Assuming one passenger kilometer equals one passenger ton kilometer (which is a normal figure) then the traffic unit would,

of course, in fact become ton kilometers. On this basis the 1958 traffic would total 85 billion ton kilometers. Since the term billion is ambiguous internationally, would Mr. Nouvion confirm that this is 85×10^9 ?

Could Mr. Nouvion also confirm the traffic density on the lines so far electrified and to be electrified in the period 1959 to 1963 and give the approximate total cost figures for the fixed installation for the 700

miles to be electrified 1958 to 1963, and the number and cost of locomotives and multiple units cars?

Presumably 13% traffic (63% minus 50%) is 12,750 million, and the 2% route (18% minus 16%) equals 800 kilometers. This would be a density of 15 million ton kilometers per kilometer of single track. But on electrification prior to 1959, 50% of traffic on 16% route, or say 6,000 kilometers of single track excluding sidings, would indicate a density of 7 million ton miles. This would imply that the lines to be electrified in 1959-1963 have denser traffic than those previously electrified.

Mr. Nouvion indicates a relative efficiency for the diesel locomotive measured at the diawbar of 17.1% against 24.8% in 1957 and 28.8% in the future for electric locomotives. A typical United States railroad operation of a diesel-electric locomotive is represented by a 1,500-hp locomotive operating in multiple unit in freight service.

A typical over-all load factor of 60% is derived, of course, from operation for various periods of time at various throttle positions. Efficiency of the Diesel electric locomotive is primarily of concern for the purpose of estimating fuel consumption. The time spent operating on higher throttle positions is of greatest importance for such a calculation. We may typically take three quarters of full load with a locomotive weighing 108 metric tons running at 40 mph, pulling a trailing load of 906 metric tons (1,000 United States tons). At this operating condition the rolling resistance of the locomotive is approximately 1,000 pounds and of the train 9,000 pounds.

Over a wide range of load operations, the efficiency of the diesel engine is conservatively 34% and of the over-all transmission 83%. The 1,500-hp rating of the diesel engine is measured as the net input into the generator for traction, and at 3/4 load the additional horsepower (neglecting train heating) is approximately 80 hp. Thus, in a typical United States operating condition, the over-all efficiency is 24.1%.

F. H. Brown (Commonwealth Edison Company, Joliet, Ill.): The AIEE is most fortunate in having this informative paper for its *Transactions* and reference records.

The discussor has seen at first hand some of the developments of the application of electric power at industrial frequency to the French Railways. In Paris, in 1948, discussion with some of the French electrical manufacturers disclosed the interest of the railway engineers in the development of 50-cycle traction motors. American electrical manufacturers had also been asked to participate in this development. There was no domestic demand for motors of this frequency in the United States, but one American manufacturer was of the opinion that the solution of the problem could be found by applying rectified single-phase alternating current at 50 cycles (or any other commercial frequency) to standard d-c traction motors by means of ignitron rectifiers and suitable smoothing reactors. The name of L. J. Hibbard will always be associated with this development.

In 1951, at the Railway Conference at Annecy, in the French Alps, the discussor

was afforded the opportunity to witness the performance of various types of motive power at the 75-km test line electrified with 50-cycle single-phase power at 25 kv. At that test the only motive power operated by ignitron-rectifier equipment was a 600-volt d-c motor car taken from the Paris suburban electrification, similar to the test car operated by the Pennsylvania Railroad in the Philadelphia area between 1948 and 1955. The various test locomotives were operated by single-phase commutator-type motors or by d-c motors supplied from a 50-cycle single-phase motor-generator set. There was one locomotive equipped with a multianode-type mercury-arc rectifier. At that conference, the discussor had the temerity to predict that ignitron rectifier locomotive would become an important competitor with locomotives having the a-c commutator-type motors, as well as those having d-c motors supplied from a motor-generator set, although the weight of engineering opinion at that time leaned heavily toward the latter type.

Phase unbalancing and low power factor were still being visualized by the power supply engineers as serious problems yet to be solved, with harmonic disturbances from rectifiers as an added problem of unknown magnitude.

The Annecy Conference and tests were a prelude to the electrification, with 50 cycles at 25 kv, of the important freight line between Valenciennes and Thionville, along the Belgian border, which was placed in service early in 1955. Only 5 out of the 105 locomotives built for the initial operation of this line were of the ignitron-rectifier type. The performance of these locomotives was so outstanding that all of the locomotives ordered since 1955 for the extensions of the 25-kv 50-cycle system have been of the rectifier type, as pointed out in Mr. Nouvion's paper.

Without detracting from the remarkable achievements of the engineers of the French National Railways in their successful development of railway electrification at industrial frequency, the American manufacturers who developed the ignitron-rectifier locomotive should feel proud of their contribution to this type of railway electrification.

The problems of phase unbalancing, low power factor, and harmonic disturbances visualized by the French power engineers in 1951 were found to be of less severity than anticipated after operation started in 1955, and quite capable of solution without expensive additional equipment.

Attention is called to the fact that since the first five substations were installed, using Scott-connected transformers to aid in phase balancing, all later substations have been equipped with standard single-phase transformers. Attention is also directed to the very low mileage of additional power transmission line required to serve this new system of railway electrification, as compared with former systems of electrification, because of the ability to take the power supply directly from the existing network.

These factors are, or should be, of interest to the American electric power engineers. It is becoming increasingly evident that within the foreseeable future, the American railways having dense traffic must turn

from the expensive maintenance of a multiplicity of small-capacity mobile power plants to the more economic use of purchased electric power for their locomotive units and operations.

Mr. Nouvion's paper points out the most economical solution that has been found over more than a half century of progress in railway electrification—a solution which is being applied with increasing usage on railways throughout the world.

F. Nouvion: According to the 1958 traffic handled by the French National Railways the conversion factor can be expressed as follows:

One passenger-km is equivalent to 1 passenger train gross ton-km. The billing figure is understood as 10^6 .

Some main lines so far electrified have the following traffic density:

Paris-Lyons, 512 km...	$.45 \times 10^6$ gross ton	hailed/km/year
Paris-Orleans, 120 km...	$.45 \times 10^6$ gross ton	hailed/km/year
Valenciennes-Thionville, 270 km	$.24 \times 10^6$ gross ton	hailed/km/year
Paris-Arras, 193 km...	$.28 \times 10^6$ gross ton	hailed/km/year

Other lines electrified earlier have less traffic density than those just cited, but features more pressing than traffic density such as grades, tunnels, operating conditions etc., were ruling at that time.

On lines to be electrified in the period from 1959-1963 the traffic density will be, according to present conditions, an average of 26×10^6 gross ton hauled/km/year.

For the foregoing projected lines, which include Tarascon-Marseille in 1,500 volt direct current, an evaluation made under the 1959 economic conditions shows, for the entire 1959-1963 project, an average cost of 600,000 new francs per km of route, for fixed facilities.

These routes are mainly double-track and even four-track routes out of Paris Eastern Station.

Besides work strictly related to electrification, the previously quoted figure comprises modifications of signaling and telecommunication systems, modernization of work, etc., which amounts to about 50% of the total cost.

It may be worthwhile to know that a survey made in the event of electrification of industrial-frequency single-phase, 25-kv current of the Marseille-Vintimille line, which takes into account the sole work related directly to electrification, showed an average cost of 293,000 new francs/km for double-track route.

According to traffic we evaluate:

The cost of motive power: from 14.1 10^6 new francs to 55.5×10^6 new francs per 100 km of route.

The number of locomotives: from 15 to 58 units per 100 km of route.

The 17.1% efficiency given for diesel locomotives, is an average annual efficiency figure for locomotives, taking into account light runnings, no-load runs, etc., which should not be too different in the United States and in France, whereas Mr. McClean's figure is related to the efficiency at nominal rating, or to conditions somewhat similar.

Transformation Method for the Study of Nonlinear Components

C. LAKSHMI-BAI

ASSOCIATE MEMBER AIEE

Synopsis: A simple transformation is presented for correlating the characteristic of a nonlinear element in its frequency response to sinusoidal inputs. By a process of curve fitting the characteristic is represented by a polynomial. The frequency response to sinusoidal inputs is represented as a Fourier series. The polynomial and the Fourier series are related by means of the simple transformation $x = \sin \theta$. The method is applied to some of the common nonlinearities encountered in control system components. Its use in the determination of the describing function, as well as the harmonic response function, is discussed. Details in the case of an experimental identification are included.

It is well known that Fourier series is used to determine the harmonic content of the response of linear or nonlinear elements to periodic driving functions. For calculating the Fourier coefficients it is necessary to have the response function defined over a cycle. However, quite often the nonlinear characteristic is known only graphically. Making use of this characteristic, Lewis has described a method of calculating the Fourier coefficients by graphical integration.¹ This is quite involved due to the presence of unbounded functions in the interval of integration. Booton uses the principle of effective gain to correlate mathematically the output and input of a nonlinear element.²

The method presented in this paper is believed to be rigorous in its approach and practical in application yet simple and direct. It makes use of two well-known and powerful analytical tools. One is the simple transformation

$$x = \sin \theta, -1 \leq x \leq +1 \quad (1)$$

and the other is the process of curve fitting.³ The nonlinear characteristic is represented as a polynomial in x (and therefore in $\sin \theta$) by virtue of equation 1. Now it is a matter of simple trigonometric identities to calculate the harmonic content in the response of the nonlinear element. The method is limited only to sinusoidal inputs. However, this class is of practical interest in control systems. Conversely, when the harmonic content in the response to sinusoidal inputs is

determined by experiment, the method is useful in presenting a polynomial representation for the nonlinear characteristic even without going through the process of curve fitting.

The most important use lies in determining the harmonic response function of the nonlinear element as the ratio of Laplace transforms of the polynomial in x and the input sine function, both taken in the time domain. By considering the fundamental component only, it leads to the describing function of the element. However, in this technique the true nonlinear characteristic is made use of instead of the equivalent linearized one. By a further change of variable, the method can be extended to inputs of linear combinations of sine components with different amplitudes and frequencies. This leads to the application in determining the dual-input describing function after West and others.⁴ Several illustrative examples have been worked out. The analysis has been verified experimentally in case of a lightning arrester disk which has a double-valued nonlinear characteristic. The calculated values of the harmonic components agree very well with those experimentally found with the aid of a wave analyzer.

Nomenclature

a_n } = Fourier coefficients
 b_n }
 $P_n(x) = \cos n\theta$
 $Q_n(x) = \sin n\theta$
 $F(x)$ = response of the nonlinear element in the x domain
 $G(\theta)$ = response of the nonlinear element in the θ domain

Basic Theory

Let

$$y = F(x) \quad (2)$$

be the characteristic of a nonlinear element. If

$$x = \sin \theta, -1 \leq x \leq +1 \quad (3)$$

is the input, then

$$y = F(\sin \theta), \quad (4)$$

or

$$F(\sin \theta) = G(\theta + 2\pi) \quad (5)$$

From equations 4 and 5 $F(\sin \theta)$ is also a periodic function with period 2π . As θ varies over any range, the transformation 3 shows that the interval for x is limited to $-1 \leq x \leq +1$. Further, the function G in the θ domain corresponds to the function F in the x domain. It is to be observed that the direct transformation 3 is essentially single-valued and thus is unique. The inverse transformation which is multivalued is not required in the analysis.

Consider Fig. 1. $F(x)$ is a single-valued function and varies from -1 to $+1$, for all values of θ . As $\sin \theta$ goes from -1 to $+1$, $F(x)$ traces the curve between $-1 \leq x \leq +1$ and as $\sin \theta$ goes from $+1$ to -1 , being single-valued, $F(x)$ retraces its path in $+1 \geq x \geq -1$. Equation 4 being periodic can be represented by a Fourier series

$$F(\sin \theta) = \frac{a_0}{2} + \sum_n (a_n \cos n\theta + b_n \sin n\theta) \quad (6)$$

where a_n and b_n are given by the usual integral representations for Fourier coefficients. Let two polynomials $P_n(x)$ and $Q_n(x)$ be defined by

$$P_n(x) = \cos n\theta \quad (7)$$

$$Q_n(x) = \sin n\theta \quad (8)$$

for $n = 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots$

Consider the following trigonometric identities:

$$\cos^2 n\theta + \sin^2 n\theta = 1 \quad (9)$$

$$2 \sin \theta \sin n\theta = -\cos(n+1)\theta + \cos(n-1)\theta \quad (10)$$

$$2 \sin \theta \cos n\theta = \sin(n+1)\theta - \sin(n-1)\theta \quad (11)$$

The transformation equation as given by equation 3 is $x = \sin \theta$.

From equations 3, 9, 10, and 11 the polynomials P_n and Q_n of equations 7 and 8 satisfy the following recurrence relations:

$$2xQ_n = -P_{n+1} + P_{n-1} \quad (12)$$

$$2xP_n = +Q_{n+1} - Q_{n-1} \quad (13)$$

Also, from equations 3 and 9

Paper 60-865, recommended by the AIEE Feedback Control Systems Committee and approved by the AIEE Technical Operations Department for presentation at the AIEE Summer General Meeting, Atlantic City, N. J., June 19-24, 1960. Manuscript submitted January 13, 1960; made available for printing May 26, 1960.

C. LAKSHMI-BAI is with the Indian Institute of Science, Bangalore, India.

The author takes pleasure in expressing her gratitude to Dr. P. Venkata Rao for his valuable guidance in the preparation of this paper. The author is also thankful to Dr. H. V. Gopalakrishna for supplying the lightning arrester, and to Professor H. N. Ramachandra Rao for guidance and encouragement, and to the authorities of the Indian Institute of Science for providing the facilities for carrying out this work.

$$P_0=1; Q_0=0; \text{ and } Q_1=x \quad (14)$$

Equations 12, 13, and 14 are sufficient for evaluating $P_n(x)$ and $Q_n(x)$ for positive integral values of n . The values are shown in Table I.

Making use of the tabulated values for P_n and Q_n it is possible to represent equation 6 as a polynomial in x , defined in the interval $-1 \leq x \leq +1$,

$$F(x) = \frac{a_0}{2} + \sum_n [a_n P_n(x) + b_n Q_n(x)] \quad (15)$$

Since the Fourier expansion constitutes an expression over a cycle (or half cycle in case of symmetric functions), it utilizes information on all parts of the characteristic; as does the polynomial representation in x . This is directly and linearly connected with the Fourier expansion by means of transformation 3. It is to be observed that $P_n(x)$ and $Q_n(x)$ are orthogonal in the x domain, just as $\cos n\theta$ and $\sin n\theta$ are in the θ domain.

Having known the characteristic of the nonlinear element, it can be expressed as a polynomial in x by the process of curve fitting. Expressions for $P_n(x)$ and $Q_n(x)$ from Table I are substituted in equation 15, and rearranged as polynomial in x , with coefficients which are linear combinations of a_n and b_n . Starting with the highest degree term in equation 15 the coefficients are compared with those of the polynomial obtained by curve fitting. This process determines the values of a_n and b_n for all relevant values of n ; and equation 15 is uniquely known for the given nonlinear element.

Now $P_n(x)$ and $Q_n(x)$ of equation 15 are simply replaced by $\cos n\theta$ and $\sin n\theta$ to ob-

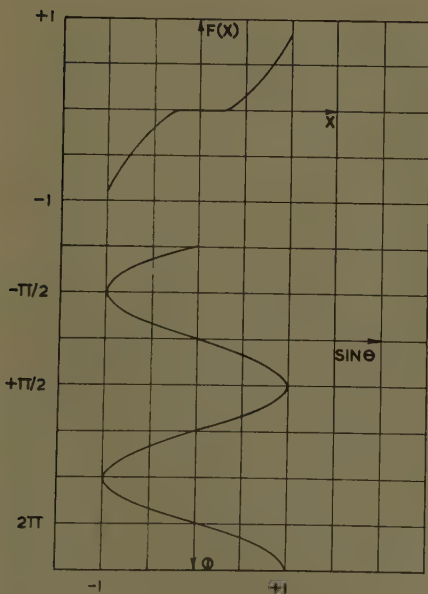


Fig. 1. A representative nonlinear characteristic and a sine input of unity amplitude

Table I. Table of Characteristic Functions from Equations 7 and 8

n	$P_n = \cos n\theta$	$Q_n = \sin n\theta$
0	1	0
1	$\sqrt{1-x^2}$	x
2	$1-2x^2$	$2x\sqrt{1-x^2}$
3	$(1-4x^2)\sqrt{1-x^2}$	$3x-4x^3$
4	$1-8x^2+8x^4$	$(4x-8x^3)\sqrt{1-x^2}$
5	$(1-12x^2+16x^4)\sqrt{1-x^2}$	$5x-20x^3+16x^5$
6	$1-18x^2+48x^4-32x^6$	$(6x-32x^3+32x^5)\sqrt{1-x^2}$
7	$(1-24x^2+80x^4-64x^6)\sqrt{1-x^2}$	$7x-56x^3+112x^5-64x^7$

* When $F(x)$ is double-valued, marked functions are to be used for $F_B(x)$, and unmarked functions for $F_A(x)$ with reference to Fig. 7. When $F(x)$ is single-valued, only unmarked functions are to be used.

tain the Fourier series as in equation 6. It is to be observed that the coefficient of the highest degree term in x of equation 15 is solely related to the coefficient of the highest frequency component in the Fourier representation for $F(x)$ as in equation 6.

Further it may be observed that $P_n(x)$ and $Q_n(x)$ are related to the Chebychev polynomials,⁵ where x stands for $\cos \theta$ instead of $\sin \theta$. However, there is no particular advantage in using these Chebychev polynomials in the present case, as the recurrence relations given by equations 10 and 11 enables one readily to calculate the necessary polynomials.

The process of curve fitting itself may briefly be described as follows. From the given characteristic curve a set of m points is taken. Assume that this set of points is related by some function $y = F(x)$. This function, in general, can be taken as a polynomial in x of degree n , ($n < m$). Then one follows the principle of least squares which states that the best representation of the data is that which makes the sum of the squares of the residuals a minimum. This process finally leads to $n+1$ linear equations to evaluate for $n+1$ undetermined coefficients. Thus, the required polynomial is uniquely determined. However, the common nonlinearities encountered in servosystem practice are generally simple and are symmetric about the origin. In such cases the process of curve fitting is much more simplified than the general case previously described.

Examples

EXAMPLE 1

Fig. 2 shows the characteristic of dead space. One fits the curve,

$$F(x) = 0.8x^3, \text{ in } -1 \leq x \leq +1 \quad (16)$$

Equation 16 will be compared with equation 15 after substituting for the polynomials P_n and Q_n from Table I. It is to be observed that since $F(x)$ is a single-

valued symmetric function $a_0 = a_{2n+1}$ and $b_{2n} = 0$ for all values of n .

Now substituting for $Q_1(x)$ and $Q_3(x)$,

$$F(x) = b_1 x + b_3 (3x - 4x^3) + \dots \quad (17)$$

Since equation 16 does not contain terms higher than the cubic, b_5, b_7 , etc., are zero.

Comparing equations 16 and 17,

$$b_3 = -0.2, \text{ and } b_1 = +0.6 \quad (18)$$

Thus, $F(x)$ can be written as

$$F(x) = 0.6x - 0.2(3x - 4x^3) \quad (19)$$

Therefore

$$F(\sin \theta) = 0.6 \sin \theta - 0.2 \sin 3\theta \quad (20)$$

Equation 20 is the Fourier series for

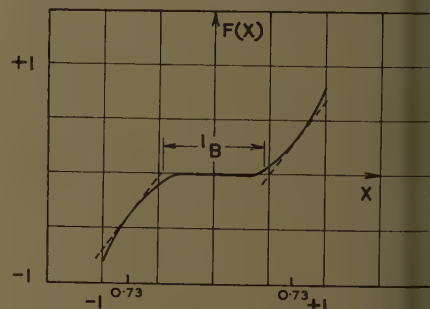


Fig. 2. Output versus input characteristic for an element with dead space

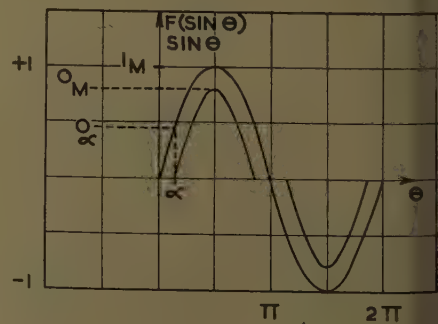
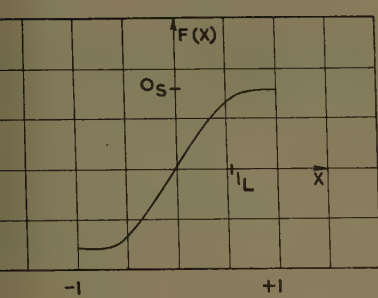
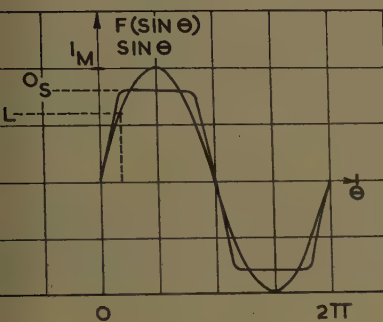


Fig. 3. Output $O(t)$ as a function of time for input $i(t) = I_M \sin t$ to an element with dead space, shown for $I_M \times I_B/2$



4. Output versus input characteristic of an element whose output is limited by saturation



5. Output $O(t)$ as function of time for a sinusoidal input $i(t) = I_M \sin t$, to a saturated element with $I_M > I_L$, the limiting value of input

in θ). Fig. 3 shows the response of the element with dead space to sine input function. Let

$$I_M \sin t \quad (21)$$

input function has a maximum amplitude of 1, so that $I_M = 1$. α , the angle up to which there is zero response, is given from equation 2, by

$$\sin^{-1} \frac{I_B}{2I_M} = \sin^{-1} \frac{0.46}{1} = 28^\circ \quad (22)$$

where I_B is the width of the dead band. The maximum amplitude of output is given by $K(I_M - I_B/2)$ where K is the average gain between $x = I_B/2$ and $x = 1$. Thus

$$\frac{d}{dx} (0.8x^3) = 1.27; \text{ at } x = 0.73 \quad (23)$$

Therefore, maximum amplitude of output wave = $1.27(1 - 0.46) = 0.81$, whereas the calculated peak value from the Fourier representation, equation 20, is

From Fig. 3, it will be noted that α is independent of the frequency of the input sinusoid, and that the fundamental of the output is in phase with that of the input. The magnitude of the output is a function of the ratio $I_B/2I_M$ only, and is independent of frequency.

The output wave as arrived at by this

method conforms with that arrived at by standard methods.⁶

EXAMPLE 2

Consider the case of voltage saturation in electronic amplifiers. Fig. 4 shows the saturation characteristic. O_s stands for the saturated value of the output for large positive values of the input $i(t)$. Assuming symmetry, $-O_s$ stands for the saturated value of output for large negative values of the input. Let I_L be the limiting value of the input, for which saturation just occurs, either in the positive or the negative direction depending on the sign of the input.

If to an amplifier having the input-output characteristic of Fig. 4, a sinusoidal input $i(t) = I_M \sin t$ is applied in which $I_M > I_L$, the output $O(t)$ is given by the sum of a number of harmonics. The amplitudes of these harmonics are calculated by the transformation method. $\alpha = \sin^{-1} I_L/I_M$ corresponds to the value of input for which saturation just occurs.

Let the input be given by

$$x = I_M \sin t \quad (24)$$

From Fig. 4

$$I_M = 1 \text{ ampere}$$

$$I_L = 0.6 \text{ ampere}$$

$$O_s = 0.80$$

$$\alpha = 37 \text{ degrees} \quad (25)$$

By a method of curve fitting, one gets the characteristic of Fig. 4, to be

$$F(x) = 1.53x - 0.9x^3 + 0.1x^5, \text{ in } -1 \leq x \leq +1 \quad (26)$$

It is emphasized that equation 26 represents the actual harmonic curve, and not the linearized approximate curve as in other methods. Equation 26 is compared with

$$b_1 Q_1(x) + b_3 Q_3(x) + b_5 Q_5(x) + \dots \quad (27)$$

It is to be noted that for exactly the same reasons as in example 1, $a_0 = 0$, $a_n = 0$ for all n , and $b_{2n} = 0$; coefficients higher than b_5 are zero, since the polynomial has no terms higher than x^5 in equation 26. Substituting for Q_1, Q_3, Q_5 from Table I, in equation 27

$$F(x) = b_1 x + b_3 (3x - 4x^3) + b_5 (5x - 20x^3 + 16x^5) + \dots \quad (28)$$

Comparing coefficients of like terms in equations 28 and 26 starting with the highest degree terms

$$b_5 = +0.006, b_3 = +0.194 \text{ and } b_1 = 0.917 \quad (29)$$

From equations 26, 28, and 29 the harmonic content in the response to sinusoidal inputs is given by

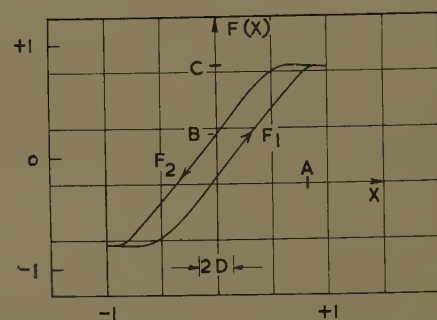


Fig. 6. A double-valued nonlinear characteristic (ideal hysteresis loop of constant width and saturation)

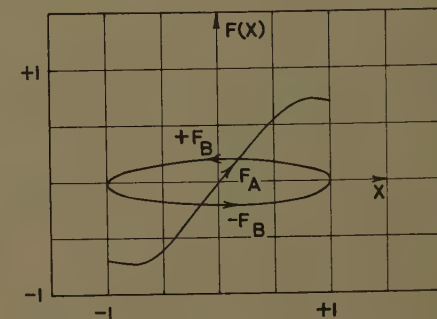


Fig. 7. Two new functions, whose sum and difference together represent the double-valued nonlinear characteristic of Fig. 6

$$F(\sin) = 0.917 \sin \theta + 0.194 \sin 3\theta + 0.006 \sin 5\theta \quad (30)$$

Fig. 5 gives the input and output curves as a function of θ .

It should be noted that for an electronic amplifier the form of the curves in Fig. 5 and the value of α are independent of the frequency of the input sinusoid for the range of frequencies that are of interest. For such sinusoidal inputs the fundamental of the output $O(t)$ is in phase with the fundamental of the input I_M and the ratio between them is a number that is a function of the magnitude of α . Thus

$$\frac{O_s}{I_M} = G(\alpha) \quad (31)$$

when $G(\alpha)$ gives the describing function of the saturated amplifier. The response curve as derived and shown in Fig. 5 agrees well with those obtained by standard methods.⁶

EXAMPLE 3

Consider the hysteresis curve as shown in Fig. 6. Let $F(x) = F_1(x)$, while x is increasing and $F(x) = F_2(x)$, while x is decreasing. Let two new functions be defined as follows:

$$F_A(x) = \frac{1}{2} \{ F_2(x) + F_1(x) \} \quad (32)$$

$$F_B(x) = \frac{1}{2} \{ F_2(x) - F_1(x) \} \quad (33)$$

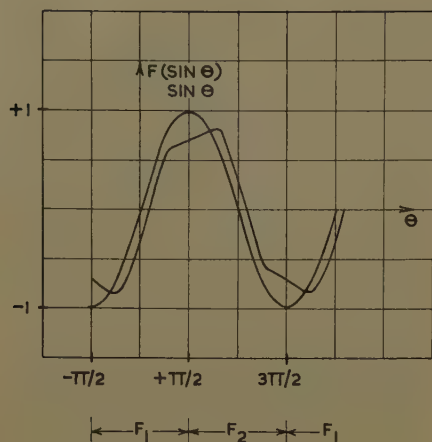
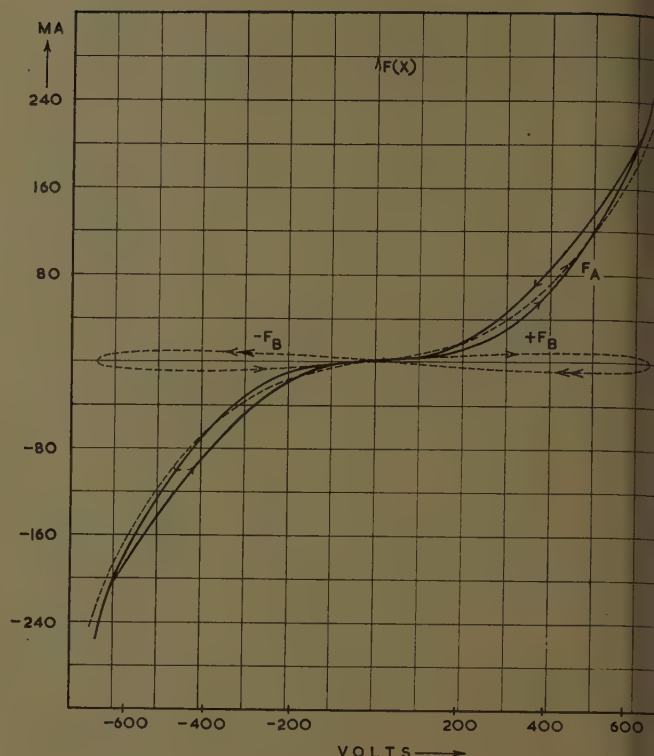


Fig. 8 (left). Output $F(\sin \theta)$ as function of time for input $i(t) = I_M \sin t$, in case of the hysteresis characteristic of Fig. 6, when evaluated as in Fig. 7

Fig. 9 (right). Solid line represents double-valued characteristic of the lightning arrester disk, determined by experiment. Dashed line represents two new functions F_A , F_B (obtained from curve fitting) whose sum and difference approximate the two branches of the experimental characteristic



so that

$$F_2(x) = F_A(x) + F_B(x) \quad (34)$$

$$F_1(x) = F_A(x) - F_B(x) \quad (35)$$

where $F_A(x)$ is a single-valued function, and $F_B(x)$ is a double-valued function in $-1 \leq x \leq +1$, as shown in Fig. 7.

Taking the following numerical values for A , B , C , and D of Fig. 6, one can fit a curve to F_A and F_B of Fig. 7.

$$A = 0.8, B = 0.2, C = 0.8, \text{ and } 2D = 0.3 \quad (36)$$

$$F_A(x) = 1.3x - 0.6x^3 \quad (37)$$

$$F_B(x) = \pm 0.2\sqrt{1-x^2} \quad (38)$$

Consider the equation

$$F_A(x) = b_1 Q_1(x) + b_3 Q_3(x) + \dots \quad (39)$$

Substituting for Q_1 and Q_3 in equation 39 one gets

$$F_A(x) = b_1 x + b_3 (3x - 4x^3) + \dots \quad (40)$$

Comparing coefficients in equation 37 with those in equation 40, starting with the highest degree term, one gets

$$b_3 = +0.15 \text{ and } b_1 = +0.85 \quad (41)$$

In equation 39 $a_n = b_{2n} = 0$, since $F_A(x)$ is a single-valued function of x .

$F_B(x)$ is a double-valued function. On comparing equation 38 with equation 15, one gets $a_1 = 0.2$. Thus,

$$F_B(x) = \pm 0.2 \cos \theta \quad (42)$$

From equations 37, 40, and 41, one gets

$$F_A(\sin \theta) = 0.85 \sin \theta + 0.15 \sin 3\theta \quad (43)$$

Making use of the definition of $F(x)$, along with equations 34, 35, 42, and 43 one gets

$$F(\sin \theta) = 0.85 \sin \theta + 0.15 \sin 3\theta - 0.2 \cos \theta \quad (44)$$

Equation 44 holds good for both the branches of curve in Fig. 5, and for all values of θ . Fig. 8 shows the response curve in comparison with the input sinusoid of unity amplitude.

EXAMPLE 4

Evaluation of the describing function in case of nonsinusoidal inputs: In particular, consider an input which is the sum of a first harmonic and a third harmonic, each of them with different amplitudes. Thus, let:

$$x = a \sin \theta + c \sin 3\theta \quad (45)$$

Let the nonlinear characteristic of interest be

$$F(x) = x^3 \quad (46)$$

Consider a change of variable

$$y = \sin \theta \quad (47)$$

so that from equations 45, 46, and 47, one gets

$$F(x) = (ay + 3cy^3 - 4cy^5)^3 \quad (48)$$

Expanding equation 48 and denoting it by $H(y)$, one gets

$$F(x) = H(y) = (a + 3c)^2 y^3 - 12c(a + 3c)^2 y^5 + 48c^2(a + 3c)y^7 - 64c^3 y^9 \quad (49)$$

It is important to observed that the harmonic content in the response of the element with characteristic $F(x)$, to an input $a \sin \theta + c \sin 3\theta$ is essentially the same as the harmonic content in the response of the element with characteristic $H(y)$ to an unity-amplitude sinusoidal input. Equation 49 is compared with

$$\frac{a_0}{2} + b_1 Q_1(y) + b_3 Q_3(y) + b_5 Q_5(y) + b_7 Q_7(y) + b_9 Q_9(y) + \dots \quad (50)$$

$F(x)$ being a single-valued function has

its $a_0 = a_n = b_{2n} = 0$ for all values of n . Expressions for the various Q 's in equation 50 are substituted for, from Table and the b -coefficients evaluated give the following values:

$$b_3 = -\frac{1}{4}c^3, b_7 = \frac{-3ac^2}{4}, b_9 = \frac{3}{4}ac(c-a)$$

$$b_5 = \frac{1}{4}(3c^3 + 6a^2c - a^3), \text{ and}$$

$$b_1 = \frac{3a}{4}(2c^2 - ac + a^2)$$

Equations 6 and 51 together give the Fourier series for $H(\sin \theta)$, which is essentially the same for $F(a \sin \theta + c \sin 3\theta)$.

From equation 51, the coefficient of the fundamental component is given by $3a/4(2c^2 - ac + a^2)$. The input component of this frequency is a $\sin \theta$, hence the apparent gain is $3/4(2c^2 - ac + a^2)$, and there is no phase change. When $c = 0$, this is for a single frequency input, the gain reduces to $3a^2/4$, which is the conventional describing function for a cubic characteristic. Thus, the dual input describing function⁴ for this case is given by $3/4(2c^2 - ac + a^2)$.

EXAMPLE 5

Nonunity amplitude for the input sinusoidal function: Let $f(x)$ be the nonlinear characteristic and let the input under consideration be

$$x = A \sin \theta \quad (51)$$

Now, the Fourier coefficients for $f(x)$ with input as in equation 52 are essentially

II. Harmonic Content at Different Amplitudes for the Input Sine-Voltage at 50 Cycles, and the Calculated Values at 450 Volts Rms

Rms Applied Voltage in Volts	Harmonic Percentage			
	2nd	3rd	4th	5th
174	5.65	23.8	0	0
252	7.85	28.6	0.8	2.35
356	7.5	27.1	0	2.35
450	7.3	27.1	0	3.85
450	7.0	27.0	0	3.0

the same as those for $f(A \cdot x/A)$ with

$$\sin \theta \quad (53)$$

which means that x is to be replaced by x/A in the recurrence relations given by equations 10 and 11, and x/A to be treated as a new variable.

EXAMPLE 6

A lightning arrester disk⁷ has been chosen as the sample under consideration. Figure 9 shows the experimental characteristic as a continuous curve and the fitted curve as dotted ones. The peak value of applied voltage is 636 volts, and is converted to a scale of one unit on the x -axis. The corresponding current is 248 milliperes, and is also converted to a scale of one unit on the y -axis. This scaling is necessary to study the nonunity amplitude of sine-input in the interval $-1 \leq x \leq +1$ in example 5.

The fitted curve has the equation

$$y = 0.3x + 0.75x^3 + 0.035x^5 + 0.005(2x\sqrt{1-x^2}) \quad (54)$$

The last term in equation 54 takes care of the double-valued nature of the characteristic. On comparing equation 54 with equation 15 and evaluating the b 's we get

$$b_0 = 0.066; b_2 = \frac{7}{100} b_1; b_3 = \frac{27}{100} b_1; \text{ and } b_5 = \frac{3}{100} b_1 \quad (55)$$

In equation 55, b_2 , b_3 , and b_5 , respectively, stand for the second, third, and fifth harmonic components in the response. These are expressed as percentages of the fundamental. Thus, the Fourier series for its response is given by

$$y(\sin \theta) = 0.066 \left(\sin \theta + \frac{7}{100} \sin 2\theta + \frac{27}{100} \sin 3\theta + \frac{3}{100} \sin 5\theta \right) \quad (56)$$

Table III

Example	Values as per Grief		Values as per This Method	
	Describing Function	Phase Shift in Degrees	Describing* Function	Phase Shift in Degrees
1 Dead space	0.415	0	$\frac{0.6}{1.27} = 0.47$	0
2 Saturation	0.675	0	$\frac{1.53}{2.167} = 0.705$	0
3 Hysteresis	0.9	8	$\frac{0.85}{1} = 0.85$	13

* The describing function is calculated as $(1/\text{average slope}) \times (\text{describing function calculated for nonunity gain})$. The average slope in example 1 is taken at $x = 0.73$, and in example 2 at $x = 0.5$.

Different amplitudes of sine-input are applied to the specimen at 50 cycles per second frequency. In each of these cases the harmonic content is measured on a wave analyzer. The calculated values are for an applied rms voltage of 450 volts. Table II compares the calculated values with the experimental ones, and also gives the harmonic content at various amplitudes for the input.

Discussion

Grief⁸ has given the values of the describing function under the assumptions that the nonlinearity must be symmetric about the zero-point, and that the gain of the nonlinear element is unity. However, when the gain is different from one, a scalar multiplier can be introduced.

In the present paper, these assumptions are relaxed. In the process of curve fitting it is immaterial whether the curve is symmetric or not as borne out in example 6. The gain of the nonlinear element is the same as the slope of its characteristic curve; and this need not be unity.

To compare the values obtained by the present method with those of Grief, average slope in the interval 0 to 1 is taken out as an equivalent scalar multiplier. Since the method on hand relaxes the two assumptions the difference in values as compared with Grief's should be in favor of the present method.

In case of double-valued functions, the original curve is represented as the sum or difference of a single-valued and a new double-valued function. The term introduced by the latter should be treated as a correction term, rather than as part of the polynomial; this is so, because, in general it is an irrational term and therefore cannot make up the polynomial.

In Fig. 8, around $\theta = \pi/2$, there is a slight upward slope for the response curve. Strictly speaking, this slope should be the same as the slope of that part of the hysteresis curve which is horizontal (Fig.

6). This is due to the fact that in fitting the curve as in Fig. 7, the ellipse F_B introduces a certain error towards the saturation point. It is this error that is carried over to the response curve. In view of this, an asteroid may give a better fit rather than an ellipse in certain cases. However, the example worked out is for an ideal loop with constant width.

The experimental and the fitted curve are shown in Fig. 9, in case of the lightning arrester disk. The characteristic is a double-valued function and also has a slight dissymmetry. Both these are taken care of by the term $2x\sqrt{1-x^2}$, which corresponds to a second-harmonic component. Its presence has been found in the experimental wave analysis also.

Example 4 is only a brief attempt at showing the application of the method to the generalized describing functions. For a correct understanding and appreciation of the advantages of the method it would be helpful if a specific problem is taken up for detailed study.

A table, showing the output-input responses of nonlinear devices, where all of the quantities have been normalized, is under preparation and will be presented in due course.

Conclusions

As stated in the discussion, the only limitation on the accuracy of the method is set by the degree of accuracy with which the curve fitting is carried out.

Minor dissymmetries and nonunity gain of the nonlinear element can be duly taken care of.

The most important use is in determining the harmonic response function of the nonlinear element as $L\{F(x)\}/L(x)$, both the Laplace transforms being taken in the time domain; for $-1 \leq x \leq +1$.

Considering only the fundamental component of the response leads to the conventional describing functions.

One of the striking features of the method is that it can be readily ex-

tended to multiple sine inputs as shown in example 4. This is useful in evaluating the multiple-input describing function.

References

1. HARMONIC ANALYSIS FOR NONLINEAR CHARACTERISTICS, L. J. Lewis. *AIEE Transactions*, pt. I (*Communication and Electronics*), vol. 73, 1954 (Jan. 1955 section), pp. 693-700.
2. THE MEASUREMENTS AND REPRESENTATION OF

NONLINEAR SYSTEMS, R. C. Booton. *Transactions, Professional Group on Circuit Theory, Institute of Radio Engineers*, New York, N. Y., vol. PGCT-1, no. 4, Dec. 1954, pp. 32-34.

3. METHODS IN NUMERICAL ANALYSIS (book), K. L. Nielsen. The Macmillan Company, New York, N. Y., 1956, p. 260.

4. THE DUAL INPUT DESCRIBING FUNCTION AND ITS USE IN THE ANALYSIS OF NONLINEAR FEEDBACK SYSTEMS, J. C. West, J. L. Douce, R. K. Livesley. *Proceedings, Institution of Electrical Engineers*, London, England, vol. 103, pt. B, 1956, p. 463.

5. TABLES OF CHEBYCHEV POLYNOMIALS (book).

National Bureau of Standards, Washington, D. C. 1952.

6. FREQUENCY RESPONSE (book), R. Oldenburger, editor. "Approximate Frequency Response Methods for Representing Saturation and Deadband," H. Chestnut. The Macmillan Company, 1956, p. 269.

7. LIGHTNING ARRESTER DEVELOPMENT, H. Gopalakrishna. *Thesis, University of Mysore, India*, 1957.

8. DESCRIBING FUNCTION METHOD OF SERVOMECHANISM ANALYSIS APPLIED TO MOST COMMONLY ENCOUNTERED NONLINEARITIES, H. J. Grief. *AIEE Transactions*, pt. II (*Applications and Industry*), vol. 72, Sept. 1953, pp. 243-48.

Adjustable Frequency Drives with Rotating Machine Power Supply

A. T. BACHELER
ASSOCIATE MEMBER AIEE

C. G. HELMICK
MEMBER AIEE

THE squirrel-cage induction motor so well known to manufacturers and users of machinery of all kinds is usually considered to be a constant-speed drive because the power available for energizing the motors nearly always has a fixed frequency. This is the frequency of the available power supply from a utility company or local power plant. If an adjustable frequency power supply with the proper characteristics is provided, these motors will operate over a wide speed range with essentially constant torque capability. The rugged, simple construction of the squirrel-cage motor or the similar reluctance synchronous motor can thus be combined with the flexibility of an adjustable speed drive. Fig. 1 shows the basic elements of an adjustable frequency drive consisting of a synchronous generator, its adjustable speed drive, starting equipment, and the drive motors.

The adjustable frequency drive system has come into general and widespread use in the synthetic textile yarn industry in the last 10 years. It has been used in the sugar-cane milling and steel industries for many years and in a few specialized applications such as testing machines, nuclear power-plant coolant pumps, and film-forming machines. But the surface

has just been scratched and there are certainly many more instances where the adjustable frequency drive can be used advantageously. The purpose of this paper is to describe the special characteristics of adjustable frequency drives including torque characteristics of induction and synchronous motors, starting methods, and draw control methods, and to illustrate these features with typical applications. Greater familiarity with this system of power transmission may stimulate new ideas and new uses on existing and new process machinery.

The investment in the adjustable frequency power supply may be justified by one or more of the following considerations, where applicable:

1. The mechanical simplicity of the a-c squirrel-cage induction motor and the similar reluctance-type synchronous motor makes them desirable as driving means at the point of use of power on a machine. Power is delivered to the motor through a fixed or flexible electric cable in contrast to

gear trains, chains, line shafts, bevel gear or other mechanical means of delivering mechanical power at the same place.

2. The shaft, bearings, and frame of the motor may be used as part of the drive machine and carry part or all of the drive member.

3. Extremely high shaft speeds are obtainable with direct-connected squirrel-cage motors operating at high frequency. Flat-belt drives may approach the speeds thus obtainable but present problems in wear and replacement.

4. Squirrel-cage induction motors and reluctance motors have only stationary electric connections and are readily obtainable with sealed prelubricated ball bearing requiring no attention for several years. These motors can be put in places that would be too hazardous or inaccessible for maintenance required for other types of adjustable speed drives.

5. The electrical characteristics of an a-c motor permit abrupt or cushioned starting of a driven member, replacing a clutch with a simple switch or starter for the motor. A motor driving a part of a machine may be removed from the power supply by a relay in the event of an overload and leave the remainder of the machine in production. A mechanical line-shaft drive, on the other hand, may be shut down completely, or may continue running and damage the machine.

Basic Features of Adjustable Frequency Systems

A basic feature of the adjustable frequency drive is that all induction or syn-

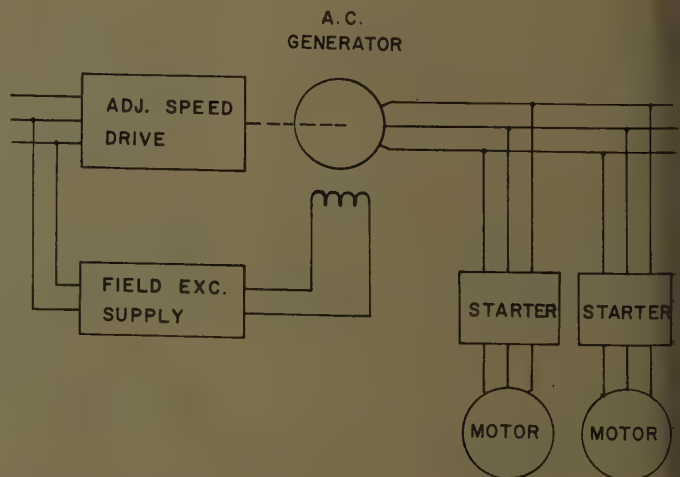


Fig. 1. Basic elements of adjustable frequency drive system

Paper 57-714, recommended by the AIEE General Industry Applications Committee and approved by the AIEE Technical Operations Department for presentation at the AIEE Summer General Meeting, Montreal, Que., Canada, June 24-28, 1957. Manuscript submitted March 29, 1957; made available for printing March 1, 1960.

A. T. BACHELER is with Westinghouse Electric Corporation, Buffalo, N. Y., and C. G. HELMICK is with Westinghouse Electric Corporation, East Pittsburgh, Pa.

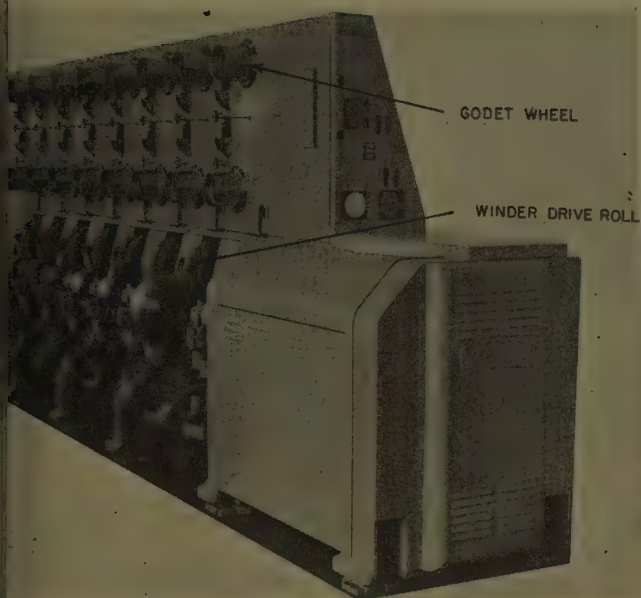


Fig. 2. Portion of synthetic textile fiber spinning machine



Fig. 3. Rod mill run-out table with adjustable frequency roll motors

ous motors connected to a given a-c power supply will have the same synchronous speed if they all have the same number of poles.

When the sections of a machine driven by a multiple-motor adjustable frequency drive must run at exactly the same speed, synchronous motors must be used. Under steady-state conditions there is no speed error between machine sections or between an individual machine section and the power-supply generator. An angular error will appear if there is a load change, but this load-angle change can be made small by selecting a motor of sufficient size.

The exact relationship between the synchronous speeds of motor and power-supply generator permits precise speed control of the load by regulating the supply frequency.

A prime example of the use of synchronous motors on an adjustable frequency power supply is the modern synthetic fiber spinning machine. Individual pumps for extruding the spinning solution are driven by synchronous motors energized from a common adjustable frequency power supply. Godet wheels, as shown in Fig. 2, are driven by individual synchronous motors energized from an adjustable frequency power supply independent of that for the pumps. The surface-drive rolls for the winder are also driven by synchronous motors operating either from the same power supply as Godet motors or from a power supply operating at a slightly different frequency.

Induction motors have a slip which is dependent upon load, representing an error in speed regardless of how well the

power-supply frequency is controlled. If the normal slip is not objectionable, or if the motor can be selected large enough so that it will have an acceptably low value of slip, the induction motor should be used. In the example of the spinning machine, the light friction load of winder rolls might be driven by a low-slip induction motor of the same physical size as the synchronous motor required to synchronize the WK^2 of the rolls. An extremely low slip on the order of 0.2% or less could be obtained.

The slip of the induction motor can be put to good use in some applications. The rod-mill run-out table illustrated in Fig. 3 is an example in the steel industry. Rolls for transporting the hot rod are individually driven by squirrel-cage motors having substantial slip. All are energized from an adjustable frequency generator. As the rod runs down the table and each roll picks up its share of the load, traction between the rod and the rolls tends to keep all rolls running at the same speed. Since the motor speed torque characteristics are similar, each motor carries its own share of the load within the limits established by variation in full-load slip from one motor to the next. The higher the average slip, the less effect variations in roll diameter will have upon load division.

Motor Performance

Requirements for an adjustable frequency power supply depend upon the particular characteristics of the motors when operated on an adjustable frequency system. Most electric machines,

including induction motors, synchronous motors, and generators, are capable of operating at a fixed value of flux density in the iron. The voltage generated in the windings of a specific machine operated over a speed range as a generator is proportional to the flux density and the speed. Similarly, the motor is capable of supporting a voltage that is proportional to the frequency.

It follows, therefore, that it is a basic fundamental of adjustable frequency drives that the machines can operate at essentially constant volts per cycle. Since motors so energized have nearly constant flux the torque is proportional to the in-phase component of load current. The ability of motors to carry constant-load current, and therefore, constant torque, over a wide frequency range depends on several factors, of which the most important are the relationship of copper and iron loss and the type of ventilation system. These factors must be taken into consideration when applying motors to a variable frequency system. Many adjustable frequency drives can make use of standard 60-cycle open, or even enclosed, fan-cooled motor designs. This is not intended to imply that any squirrel cage or synchronous motor meeting National Electrical Manufacturers Association Standards for voltage and frequency variation can be operated at its rated torque over a wide speed range. Each application should be considered in the light of its special requirements. It is frequently practical to select standard 60-cycle motors of the next higher horsepower(hp) rating, especially in the case of fractional hp motors.

The use of standard motor designs makes it desirable to standardize on motors having the same voltage rating at 60 cycles, such as 220 or 440 volts. This practice benefits both manufacturer and user in reducing the amount of design work and the delivery time. The emergency replacement of motors becomes easier when a standard 60-cycle machine has been selected.

The speed-torque curves of Fig. 4 are typical of an induction motor operated at various frequencies from 50 to 20 cycles at constant volts per cycle. At the lower frequencies there appears a reduction in maximum torque. It is caused by *IR* drop in the primary winding of the motor which reduces the internal voltage and the motor flux. The rated torque would also be reduced slightly for the same reason. In the case of a variable torque load such as a centrifugal pump, a slight reduction in available torque would be acceptable. On the other hand, a constant torque load such as a conveyor, may require as much continuous and peak torque capacity at low speed as at high speed. This can be provided by a 10 to 15% increase in applied voltage at the lower frequencies. The starting torque of the motor is also increased by the same means.

Effect of Line-Voltage Drop on Pull-In Torque of Synchronous Motors

Reluctance synchronous motors are subject to a similar reduction in maximum torque at low frequency when operated at constant volts per cycle. They are, fur-

thermore, subject to reduction in pull-in torque and pull-out torque at the low frequencies. When synchronizing the reluctance synchronous motor, or excited synchronous motor, high current and power input are required during the acceleration of the rotor into synchronism with the rotating magnetic field. The reluctance motor in particular is subject to reduction in torque when the applied voltage is reduced. At low frequency with the corresponding value of low voltage available, line drop as well as impedance drop in the power supply and in the motor itself all combine to reduce the voltage.

Fig. 5 shows oscillograms taken on a 1-hp 3,900-rpm 4-pole 130-cycle reluctance motor driving a set of rolls having a *WK*² of 10 pounds-feet squared. These oscillograms were taken at 17 cycles and demonstrate the high pull-in current required, as well as the reduction of line voltage due to line drop. The tests were taken for the purpose of establishing corrective measures for low pull-in torque.

The oscillograms have traces of applied voltage at the motor terminals and motor current. In the trace of the terminal voltage, the envelope of voltage decreased in magnitude simultaneously with an increase in current magnitude. This is indicative of the regulation of the power supply and the line to the motor. The motor was started by gradually raising the applied voltage from zero to rated line voltage by means of a motor-operated adjustable autotransformer. Pull-in did not occur until the applied voltage was high enough to develop the required pull-in torque for the rolls running at light

load. The oscillograms show the final acceleration and pull-in as the voltage approached 100%.

In test no. 1 the a-c generator voltage was set at 41 volts and the motor connected to the generator with about 18 feet per conductor of no. 12 wire. The current pulsations are due to slipping pole and the voltage pulsations are caused by line-voltage drop. At pull-in, the peak current was 23.6 amperes rms and the motor terminal voltage was reduced to 28.3 volts. After the motor pulled into synchronism the voltage at the motor rose to 37 volts at a motor current of 13.7 amperes.

In test no. 2 the no. 12 wire was replaced with no. 6 wire and the generator voltage set at 34 volts. The motor again pulled into step at about 29 volts and 23.7 amperes. After the motor pulled into synchronism the voltage at the motor terminals rose to 33 volts, at a load current of 11.2 amperes, demonstrating that with reduced line impedance the power supply kva requirements can be reduced.

These two tests illustrate the importance of line-impedance drop at the low frequencies in determining the requirements of the power supply. While the use of heavier wire improved the synchronizing conditions, the final solution to the problem of synchronizing at low frequency was to use a higher voltage system having lower current requirements. The line drop in the normal size wire then became small and the required percentage of voltage increase at low frequency was materially reduced.

In the case illustrated no appreciable gain could have been made by the use of

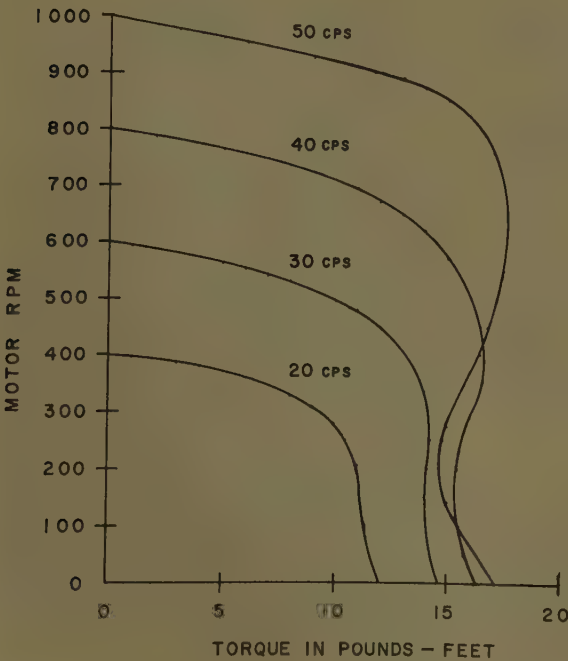
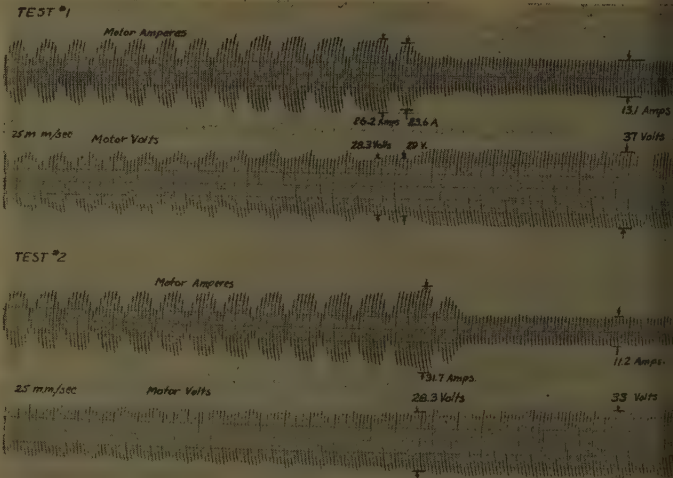


Fig. 4 (left). Induction motor speed-torque curves for various frequencies at constant volts per cycle

Fig. 5 (below). Oscillograms of pull-in tests on reluctance synchronous motor at 17 cycles



erator of lower impedance since all the voltage drop was in the generator, the generator being very large compared to a single motor.

A synchronous motor for driving a high inertia load must be selected to have adequate pull-in torque under the reduced voltage condition that occurs at pull-in. The pull-in current may exceed several times the rated current. The generator and distribution system should be selected to minimize the voltage drop during pull-in. Since the pull-in torque of a reluctance synchronous motor varies as power between the square and cube of applied voltage, a 10% reduction in voltage can result in a reduction in pull-in torque greater than 20%.

Power-Supply Characteristics

This paper is limited to adjustable frequency drives having rotating machines as the means of obtaining adjustable frequency power. In all but very special applications either a synchronous generator or a wound-rotor induction-frequency changer is used.

A synchronous generator produces a frequency exactly proportional to its speed. When the generator is separately excited with a fixed excitation, the generated no-load voltage is directly proportional to speed and therefore constant volts per cycle is maintained. Voltage regulation of the synchronous generator is relatively great, especially with low power-factor loads. Unless deliberately made oversized, the generator may have a regulation of the order of 50% or greater. With definite motor loads, however, a generator voltage regulator is almost never required to provide satisfactory control of generator voltage. If the load drops off, or some of the motors are disconnected, the generator voltage rises and the exciting current to the remaining motors also rises. This limits the rise in generator voltage. When the generator load varies to such an extent that occasional manual adjustment of the field current is objectionable, a load-compensation circuit can be used, wherein the load current is fed back through current transformers and rectifiers to augment the generator excitation.

All of the power input to the generator must be delivered as mechanical power at the shaft (except for the separate field-excitation power). The size of the driving equipment for the generator is therefore determined by the required output and the efficiency, not counting the excitation losses.

Due to its separate excitation the synchronous generator provides the most suit-

able way of obtaining increased volts per cycle for increasing the pull-in or pull-out torques of reluctance motors. An increase in excitation at the low-frequency end of the range can be obtained with generators of essentially standard design. Generator field heating is a limitation in operating over a speed range since ventilation is reduced at low speeds and greater losses are produced in the field due to the increased excitation. A boost in volts per cycle up to about 15% is usually all that is required. Forced ventilation is generally required for cooling the generator at speeds below about 600 rpm.

Selection of a synchronous-generator rating for an adjustable frequency drive must take into account the starting methods and the size of motor to be started. Adjustable frequency starting of all motors of a drive from low frequency requires no increase in size of generator over that required to supply the running load. Momentary overexcitation of the generator field may be required for break-away.

In the case of motors that are started across the line or at reduced voltage at operating frequency the generator should be large enough to permit starting the largest motor without causing other motors to pull out of step or stall. This usually requires that the voltage be held to 85% or greater during starting. Field forcing during the starting interval is easily obtainable and may permit using a generator of normal size. If the largest motor to be started represents a substantial percentage of the generator load consideration should be given to load compensation.

Power requirements during synchronizing of motors also affect the selection of generator size or method of excitation. A synchronous motor may draw two to three times rated current during pull-in, and the generator must maintain sufficient voltage at this time to develop the required pull-in torque at the motor.

The requirements vary so widely from one adjustable frequency application to another that no specific data are presented suggesting generator sizes. The generator rating should be determined in each case from the particular requirements including characteristics of the motors to be energized.

Wound-rotor induction-frequency changers offer another means of obtaining the adjustable frequency supply. The primary winding of the wound-rotor machine is excited from the constant frequency power supply. The rotor is driven by an adjustable speed drive. Adjustable frequency power is obtained

at the secondary terminals. The output frequency is stated by the following relationship:

$$\text{Frequency in cps} = \text{line frequency} \pm \frac{\text{no. of poles} \times \text{rpm}}{120}$$

In this statement the sign is plus if the primary is on the stator and the rotor is turned opposite to the direction of rotation of stator magnetic field, or minus if the rotor is turned in the direction of the field. Energizing the rotor as the primary reverses the sign.

The frequency changer acts as a transformer. Part of the power input comes from the constant-frequency line, and the rest from the shaft, as shown in the following formula which neglects all losses and assumes a 60-cycle power supply:

$$100\% \text{ power output} = \frac{60}{F} \times 100\% \text{ electric-} \\ \text{power input} + \left(\frac{F-60}{F} \right) \times 100\% \text{ mechanical-} \\ \text{power input}$$

where F = output frequency. If the output frequency is less than 60 cycles the sign of the second term becomes negative and mechanical-power output must be absorbed.

The reactive kva is all delivered by transformer action and its magnitude on the primary side is in proportion to the ratio of primary to secondary frequencies. In determining the input kva requirements of the frequency changer, its own exciting current must also be added.

For output frequencies greater than one half of primary frequency, the drive power requirements of the frequency changer are less than that of the synchronous generator.

The output voltage at no load is proportional to the output frequency and to the primary voltage. Inherent voltage regulation should be not greater than 15% for most applications since the control of output voltage is not accomplished without resorting to sizeable transformers, induction or step-type regulators, etc.

Since a wound-rotor induction-frequency changer has an output frequency at zero speed equal to primary frequency it is not as suitable as the synchronous generator for starting drives by adjustable frequency control. The induction frequency changer is generally suitable for drives operating above one half of the line frequency and where the motors can be started at the operating frequency. The inability to change the volts-per-cycle ratio easily is a limitation in applying frequency changers and makes the

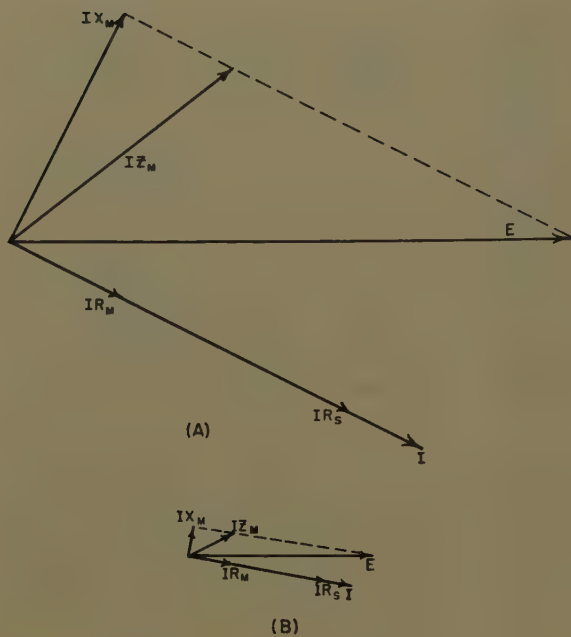


Fig. 6 (left). Vector diagram for resistance starting of motor at 50% voltage at 90 cycles (A), and with same starting resistors at 30 cycles (B), at constant volts per cycle

E = phase voltage
 I = line current
 X_m = motor reactance per phase, locked
 R_m = motor resistance per phase, locked
 R_s = starting resistance per phase

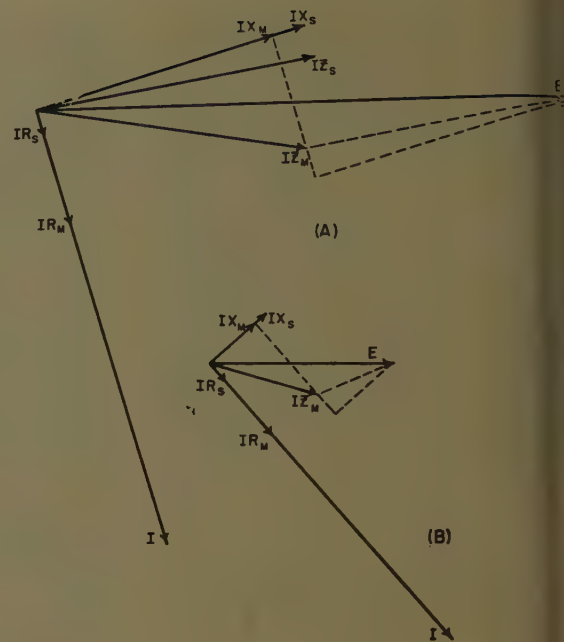


Fig. 7. See Fig. 6 for caption and identification, except:

X_s = starting reactance, per phase
 R_s = resistance of reactor per phase

synchronous generator a better choice at low frequencies. The wound-rotor frequency changer is seldom used where the output frequency may for continuous periods of time equal the line frequency. Burning of the slip rings can occur. But the frequency changer can be used at frequencies near the input frequencies as described later.

A substantial number of induction frequency changers have been installed in rayon plants in various parts of the world where the available power supply is 50 or 60 cycles and the desired operating frequency is in the range of 100 to 150 cycles or higher. Generally economics will determine whether an induction frequency changer or a synchronous generator should be used. For frequencies of 30 cycles or lower, the synchronous generator is usually more economical and provides easy adjustment of the volts-per-cycle ratio.

The means of obtaining the adjustable frequency from either a synchronous generator or an induction frequency changer requires an adjustable speed drive. It is not within the scope of this paper to discuss such adjustable speed drives other than to mention that they may be electric drives such as a d-c adjustable voltage system, a motor and eddy-current coupling, a-c adjustable speed motor, or hydraulic or mechanical transmission.

Starting Methods

Starting methods for adjustable frequency drives are just as varied and versatile as those for use on commercial a-c power systems. The simplest and least costly method of starting the motors of an

adjustable frequency system is to start them with the generator and bring them up to speed by raising the frequency. The motors can be solidly connected to the generator without switches but with suitable overcurrent protective means. This method of starting does not require an increase in generator size.

Sometimes a single motor of a group must be started while the others are running. The simplest and most economical method of starting an individual motor is to start it across the line. Since adjustable frequency power supplies are usually of limited capacity, this may impose problems in voltage regulation of the a-c generator or speed regulation of the driving equipment, and lead to the use of reduced-voltage starters. Reduced-voltage starting methods may be classified under the resistance type, reactance type, adjustable autotransformer type, and fixed tap autotransformer type.

The resistance starter can be used as on constant frequency systems, but its application to adjustable frequency systems is best limited to those having a very narrow frequency range. Furthermore, the loss in the resistance will reflect as an impact load on the adjustable speed drive and cause excessive speed deviation. When used on a wide-range adjustable frequency system, a single-step resistance starter with enough resistance to obtain the desired starting current at high frequency may not permit a loaded motor to start at the low frequency. A preferred starter is one whose impedance varies directly with the frequency.

A starting reactor has a small fixed component of resistance of the winding, and a reactance directly proportional to

frequency. Thus a reactance starter presents an impedance that tends to match the locked impedance of a motor at various frequencies.

The vector diagrams in Figs. 6 and 7 illustrate the advantages of a fixed reactance starter over a fixed resistance starter at 90 cycles and 30 cycles when used with identical motors and constant volts-per-cycle power supply. A starting current of 50% of full-voltage starting current is available at 90 cycles in each case. The reactance-type starter provides an approximation to constant starting current and torque over a wide frequency range, while the resistance starter does not.

Saturable core reactors can be used to start motors when even the reduced kva increments of a multiple-step impedance starter are too great for either the generator or its drive.

An adjustable autotransformer-type starter provides smooth characteristics on starting due to the uniform increase in applied voltage. It also has the great advantage of reducing the reflected kva at the generator, in comparison with a series-impedance starter.

The expense of an autotransformer type of starter of the variable type is justified on high precision regulated adjustable frequency systems when the size of the motor to be started is a substantial portion of the available generating capacity and where other methods of starting

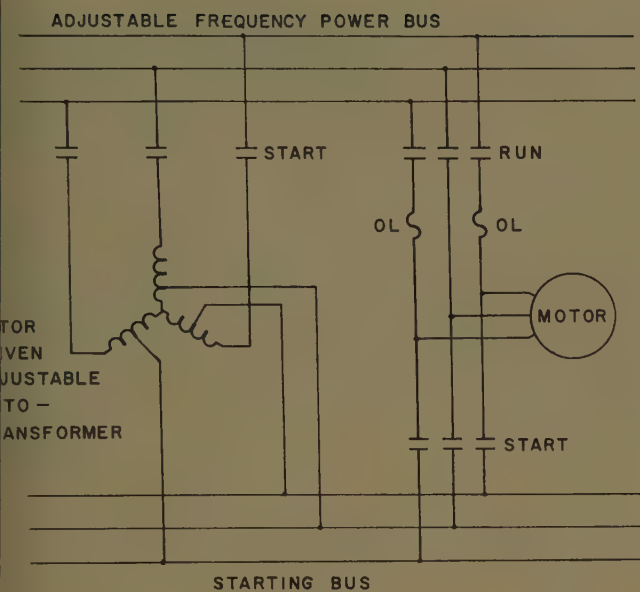


Fig. 8. Adjustable autotransformer starter

motors and their load is selected to make up for this 3% gain in motor speed so that the actual draw will now be equal to zero. The maximum draw of 10% requires that the motors themselves run at 110% of 103% speed, or 113.3% speed. The frequency changer, therefore, must run at a speed such as to raise the generator frequency by 13.3% at maximum draw.

The frequency increase can be obtained by driving the frequency changer either with or against the rotation of the magnetic field. It is far more economical to drive the frequency changer against rotation of the field since the horsepower required is so much less.

The change in frequency through the draw frequency changer is low and its speed is low. From the power relationships previously stated, it will be recognized that the horsepower to drive the draw frequency changer is low.

The frequency changer and its driving motor magnetizing and reactive kva, as well as the losses, must be supplied from the adjustable frequency power supply and must be included with the load when calculating the generator rating.

This method of draw control tends to be expensive but it may be the only practical solution if many motors are involved or if space at the machinery does not permit the mounting of any drive equipment other than the motors. When space requirements permit, various types of mechanical speed-adjusting transmissions should be considered from the standpoints of performance, accuracy, maintenance, and economics. But mechanical transmissions that are subject to slip may introduce difficulties when a precise synchronized operation between machines is required.

could not provide a sufficiently smooth start to limit the speed deviation to acceptable values. This method of starting is used to considerable extent on synthetic fiber spinning machines for the starting of pump motors, windup motors, and other auxiliary motors of substantial size. A sample diagram of this starter is shown in Fig. 8.

Intermediate between the reactance starter and the adjustable autotransformer starter is the fixed-tap autotransformer starter. This starter is suitable for adjustable frequency drives because it provides the same percentage of voltage reduction at all frequencies. It also has the advantage of reducing the kva drawn from the generator for a given voltage reduction in comparison with the reactance-type starter. It does have the limitation that the load is applied in substantial steps to the adjustable frequency power supply.

the electrical output feeds the motors whose speed is to be varied. Fig. 9 illustrates a typical draw frequency changer for two motors. The shaft of the induction frequency changer is driven by a motor energized from the adjustable frequency power supply. To vary the speed relationship a mechanical adjustable-ratio transmission is interposed between the induction frequency changer and its driving motor.

As an example, consider that a draw of 0 to +10% is required. The frequency changer must be driven over a speed range to obtain the draw range and it must increase the line frequency in order to obtain positive draw. It is not feasible to operate the frequency changer at zero speed, so a minimum speed is selected in order to produce about 3% increase in frequency. The gear ratio between the

Draw Control Methods

Frequently the application requires that certain sections of a driven machine have their speeds adjustable with respect to other sections. Some small synthetic fiber spinning machines used for research or development purposes require relative speed adjustment or draw between the Godet wheels and the winder rolls (see Fig. 2). It is desirable to hold the speed ratio, once set, within the same accuracy as the speed accuracy of the main drive. A range of 5 to 10% relative speed control can be obtained with accuracy of the order of 0.1% by the use of an induction frequency changer. The frequency changer is energized from the adjustable frequency power supply and

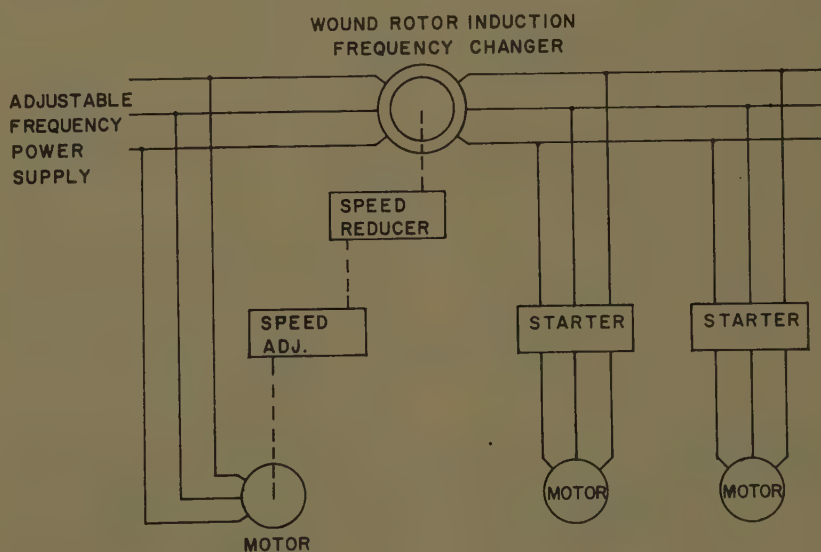


Fig. 9. Draw control frequency changer

Typical Applications

A partial list of typical applications will indicate the widely different fields in which use has been made of the adjustable frequency drive. All of the machines listed below operate or have the ability to operate at several different speeds or over a continuous range of speeds:

1. Film-forming machines.
2. Steel mill run-out tables.
3. Textile bobbin winders.
4. Yarn twisters.
5. Yarn winder traverse motions.
6. Synthetic-yarn spinning machines.

7. Carpet looms.
8. Rayon bucket spinning machines.
9. Rayon extractors.
10. Sealed pumps for nuclear-power plants.
11. Internal grinders.
12. Spin-testing machines.
13. Model test stands.
14. Dynamometers.
15. Conveyors.
16. Sugar-mill tandem drives.

The cost of an adjustable frequency power supply is normally justifiable only when there are a large number of duplicate or similar motors driving numerous sections of a machine. This is of special interest to textile machinery builders and

users since the textile industry is characterized by multiple-station machinery having many identical spindles, rolls, or bobbins operating at the same speed. The predominance of textile applications in this list is therefore not surprising.

It is the hope of the authors that this paper will stimulate further consideration of the effective use of adjustable frequency drive systems on multiple-station machinery, or where exact synchronism is required between a number of drive units.

Equations for Evaluating Short-Circuit Forces on Multiple-Strap Single-Phase and Polyphase Busses for Supplying Low-Frequency Induction Furnaces

T. H. CHIN
ASSOCIATE MEMBER AIEE

THOMAS J. HIGGINS
FELLOW AIEE

THE PURPOSE of this paper is threefold: to advance general equations for calculating the short-circuit forces associated with each subconductor, conductor, and bus support of a multiple-conductor rectangular-strap single-phase or polyphase bus; to illustrate application of these equations in actual design by numerical analyses of several busses typical of the different major types encountered in practice; and to determine the efficiency and relative accuracy of several approximate procedures advanced for reducing the total numerical labor incident to application for a specified bus.

The essential values of the general equations may be summarized as follows. General equations underlying calculation of the short-circuit forces associated with the individual phases of multiply subdivided conductor busses comprised of conductors of structural shape are available in the literature.¹ However, exhaustive survey² reveals that explicit expressions for the forces associated with

the individual subconductors, conductors, and individual bus supports are not available, except for the special case of the bus comprised of coplanar phases, each phase conductor comprised of two channels placed flange to flange, a geometry detailed by Siegel and Higgins.³ But under the heavy loads typical of modern central station, electric furnace, electric welder, and other industrial plant-distribution systems, there has occurred an increasing use of busses comprised of multiple-conductor phases. Accordingly, as stressed by Schurig,⁴ Jones (in a private letter to the second author), and other designers of such busses, there is a pressing need of equations enabling calculation in design of the essential electrical quantities determining performance of the bus in practice. Such equations have been advanced in a recent paper⁵ for calculation of the inductances, reactances, impedances, current distribution, and voltage drops. In addition to these parameters which determine the electrical performance of the bus, it is obviously most desirable (especially in the design of busses to carry the very large currents associated with modern electric induction-furnace operations), to have equations for calculating the mutual electromagnetic forces which determine the mechanical performance of the bus under normal or short-circuit condi-

tions. Precisely such equations are advanced in this paper.

Scope of Paper

By use of well-established basic theory, specific general equations for the short-circuit forces associated with the individual subconductors, conductors, and bus supports of a rectangular-strap multiple-conductor bus are effected through use of geometric mean distance theory. Subsequently, equations enabling a more rapid and less laborious numerical calculation are effected by obtaining the limiting forms assumed by the general equations as the width of the rectangular strap conductors is decreased to zero.

With these equations available, application is illustrated by specific calculation of the short-circuit forces on the subconductors, conductors, and bus support of three specifically dimensioned busses typical of the designs encountered in induction-furnace practice.

Confirmative of the correctness of both the general equations and of the numerical calculation, corresponding values of

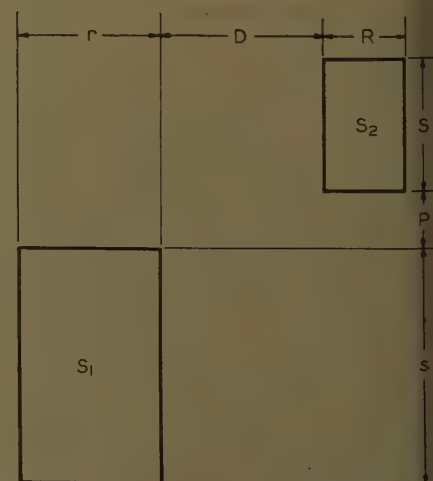


Fig. 1. Two arbitrarily located parallel-side rectangular areas

Paper 60-651, recommended by the AIEE Industrial and Commercial Power Systems Committee and approved by the AIEE Technical Operations Department for presentation at the AIEE North Eastern District Meeting, Providence, R. I., May 2-4, 1960. Manuscript submitted April 4, 1957; made available for printing March 21, 1960.

T. H. CHIN is with Westinghouse Electric Corporation, Pittsburgh, Pa.; and THOMAS J. HIGGINS is with the University of Wisconsin, Madison, Wis.

ed for both the full cross sections and line-segment approximations are to be in good agreement. Similarly, the sequence is found to have little effect on the magnitude of the total force on a conductor or bus support. Accordingly, it is to be concluded that the corresponding approximate methods of calculation, as detailed in the paper, afford sufficient accuracy for most design purposes. Finally, a concise summary of the essential values enfolded in the analysis concludes the paper.

Derivation of Basic Equations for Short-Circuit Forces

SINGLE-PHASE SUBDIVIDED-CONDUCTOR BUS

By the well-established theory, the inductance L of a bus comprised of two conductors with rectangular cross-sections S_1 and S_2 arranged as in Fig. 1 is

$$L = \frac{2 \log (D_{12}^2 / D_{11} D_{22})}{2 \log (D_{12}^2 / D_{11} D_{22})} - (2/I^2) \sum_{i=1}^2 \sum_{j=1}^2 w_i w_j S_i S_j \log D_{ij} \quad (1)$$

where I is the magnitude of the circuit current; w_i and w_j are, respectively, the current densities in S_i and S_j , taken positive for current in one direction and negative for current in the other direction; D_{ij} is the geometric mean distance between S_i and S_j . The energy in the magnetic field associated with the current is $W = LI^2/2$; whence equation 1 yields

$$W = - \sum_{i=1}^2 \sum_{j=1}^2 w_i w_j S_i S_j \log D_{ij} \quad (2)$$

The rectangular components of the mutual electromagnetic force exerted between the two conductors are

$$f_D = \partial W / \partial D; \quad f_P = \partial W / \partial P \quad (3)$$

Substituting from equation 2 in equation 3 yields

$$f_D = - \sum_{i=1}^2 \sum_{j=1}^2 w_i w_j S_i S_j \partial (\log D_{ij}) / \partial D \quad (4)$$

$$f_P = - \sum_{i=1}^2 \sum_{j=1}^2 w_i w_j S_i S_j \partial (\log D_{ij}) / \partial P \quad (5)$$

In practice it commonly happens that each of the two conductors is comprised of several subconductors connected in parallel; say one comprised of m subconductors numbered from 1 to m and the other of n subconductors numbered from $m+1$ to $m+n$. The pertinent generalizations of equations 4 and 5 are

$$f_D = - \sum_{i=1}^{m+n} \sum_{j=1}^{m+n} w_i w_j S_i S_j \partial (\log D_{ij}) / \partial D \quad (6)$$

and

$$f_P = - \sum_{i=1}^{m+n} \sum_{j=1}^{m+n} w_i w_j S_i S_j \partial (\log D_{ij}) / \partial P \quad (7)$$

In general, f_D and f_P are the component forces on a specified conductor or a specified subconductor according as D and P are parameters locating the specified conductor with respect to the other; or are parameters locating the specified subconductor with respect to the other $(m+n-1)$ subconductors.

POLYPHASE SUBDIVIDED-CONDUCTOR BUS

If an n -phase system is comprised of n distinct conductors, one conductor, say a , can be considered as carrying current I_a (the currents being expressed as complex quantities) and the remaining $(n-1)$ conductors can be considered as connected in parallel and carrying the return current. Hence, the bus can be "interpreted" as a single-phase bus comprised of two conductors, one full, the other subdivided; whence it follows from equations 6 and 7 that the component forces on conductor a are

$$f_D = -I_a \sum_{i=b}^n I_i \partial (\log D_{ai}) / \partial D \quad (8)$$

and

$$f_P = -I_a \sum_{i=b}^n I_i \partial (\log D_{ai}) / \partial P \quad (9)$$

If the individual conductors are subdivided, a comprised of a' subconductors numbered from 1 to a' , b of b' subconductors numbered from $a'+1$ to $a'+b'$, and correspondingly for the others, equations 6 and 7 give

$$f_D = - \sum_{i=1}^{a'} \sum_{j=1}^{a'+\dots+n'} w_i w_j S_i S_j \times \partial (\log D_{ij}) / \partial D \quad (10)$$

and

$$f_P = - \sum_{i=1}^{a'} \sum_{j=1}^{a'+\dots+n'} w_i w_j S_i S_j \times \partial (\log D_{ij}) / \partial P \quad (11)$$

where f_D and f_P are the component forces on conductor a or on any subconductor of a , a' , according as D and P are parameters locating conductor a with respect to the other $(n-1)$ conductors, or are parameters locating subconductor a' with respect to the other $(a'+\dots+n')$ subconductors. In either the single-phase or the polyphase case, the total force $f = (f_D^2 + f_P^2)^{1/2}$

can be determined in both magnitude and direction providing the derivatives indicated in the summations can be expressed as known functions of the dimensions of the conductors and the bus. Accordingly, we turn now to the development of equations for calculating these derivatives.

Equations for the Derivatives of the Geometric Mean Distances

By previously advanced theory^{6,7} the geometric-mean-distance D_{12} between two arbitrarily located parallel-sided rectangular areas S_1 and S_2 as in Fig. 1 is

$$S_1 S_2 \log D_{12} = - (25/12) S_1 S_2 - (1/24) \sum_{i=1}^4 \sum_{j=1}^4 (-1)^{i+j} \times K(A_i, B_j) \quad (12)$$

wherein

$$K(A_i, B_j) = (A_i^4 - 6A_i^2 B_j^2 + B_j^4) \log (A_i^2 + B_j^2) + 4A_i B_j (B_j^2 - A_i^2) + \tan^{-1} (B_j / A_i) - 2\pi A_i B_j \quad (13)$$

and

$$A_1 = |D + R + r|; \quad A_2 = |D + R|; \quad A_3 = |D|; \quad A_4 = |D + R| \quad (14)$$

and

$$B_1 = |P + S + s|; \quad B_2 = |P + S|; \quad B_3 = |P|; \quad B_4 = |P + S| \quad (15)$$

The parameter D in equation 14 and P in equation 15 may be positive, zero, or negative. If $r=R$, $s=S$, $D=-r$, and $P=-S$, the two areas S_1 and S_2 are identical and superimposed, and equation 12 yields the self-geometric-mean-distance of a rectangular area. If $r=R$, $s=S$, $P=-S$, and $D=D$, the two areas S_1 and S_2 are identical and symmetrically located a distance D apart, and equation 12 yields the corresponding mutual geometric mean distance as

$$S_1 S_2 \partial (\log D_{12}) / \partial D = - (1/24) \sum_{i=1}^4 \sum_{j=1}^4 (-1)^{i+j} \partial K(A_i, B_j) / \partial A_i (dA_i / dD) \quad (16)$$

Correspondingly, equation 13 gives

$$\partial K(A_i, B_j) / \partial A_i = 4A_i (A_i^2 - 3B_j^2) \log (A_i^2 + B_j^2) + 4B_j^2 (B_j^2 - 3A_i^2) \tan^{-1} (B_j / A_i) - 3A_i B_j^2 - 2\pi B_j^2 \quad (17)$$

and equation 14 gives

$$dA_i / dD = d(D + \text{constant}) / dD = \pm 1 \quad (18)$$

where $+$ or $-$ sign is to be chosen ac-

cording as in a particular instance the value of D is such that the quantity within the bars is positive or is negative. Finally, substituting equations 17 and 18 in equation 16 yields the desired equation

$$S_1 S_2 \partial(\log D_{12}) / \partial D \\ = -(1/24) \sum_{i=1}^4 \sum_{j=1}^4 (-1)^{i+j} [4A_i(A_i^2 - 3B_j^2) \log(A_i^2 + B_j^2)^{1/2} + 4B_j(B_j^2 - 3A_i^2) \tan^{-1}(B_j/A_i) + A_i^2 - 3A_i B_j^2 - 2B_j^3] dA_i/dD \quad (19)$$

If dA_i/dD is of the same sign for $i=1$ to 4, then

$$\sum_{i=1}^4 \sum_{j=1}^4 (-1)^{i+j} A_i^3 dA_i/dD \\ = 2 \sum_{i=1}^4 \sum_{j=1}^4 (-1)^{i+j} B_j^3 dA_i/dD = 0 \quad (20)$$

and equation 19 reduces to

$$S_1 S_2 \partial(\log D_{12}) / \partial D \\ = -(1/24) \sum_{i=1}^4 \sum_{j=1}^4 (-1)^{i+j} [4A_i(A_i^2 - 3B_j^2) \log(A_i^2 + B_j^2)^{1/2} + 4B_j(B_j^2 - 3A_i^2) \tan^{-1}(B_j/A_i) - 3A_i B_j^2] dA_i/dD \quad (21)$$

If

$$dA_i/dD = 1 \text{ for } i=1 \text{ to } 4$$

then

$$3 \sum_{i=1}^4 \sum_{j=1}^4 (-1)^{i+j} A_i B_j^2 dA_i/dD = 0$$

whence equation 21 reduces to

$$S_1 S_2 \partial(\log D_{12}) / \partial D = - \\ (1/24) \sum_{i=1}^4 \sum_{j=1}^4 (-1)^{i+j} U(A_i, B_j) \quad (22)$$

where

$$U(A_i, B_j) = 4A_i(A_i^2 - 3B_j^2) \log(A_i^2 + B_j^2)^{1/2} + 4B_j(B_j^2 - 3A_i^2) \tan^{-1}(B_j/A_i) \quad (23)$$

By virtue of the identity $K(A_i, B_j) = K(B_j, A_i)$ to be obtained from equation 13 by interchanging A_i with B_j and the use of the trigonometric identity $\tan^{-1}(A_i/B_j) + \tan^{-1}(B_j/A_i) = \pi/2$, cor-

responding expressions for $S_1 S_2 \partial(\log D_{12}) / \partial P$ follow from those for $S_1 S_2 \partial(\log D_{12}) / \partial D$ through interchange of A_i and B_j and substitution of P for D . This analysis, easily effected, yields

$$S_1 S_2 \partial(\log D_{12}) / \partial P = - \\ (1/24) \sum_{i=1}^4 \sum_{j=1}^4 (-1)^{i+j} V(A_i, B_j) \quad (24)$$

wherein

$$V(A_i, B_j) = 4B_j(B_j^2 - 3A_i^2) \log(A_i^2 + B_j^2)^{1/2} + 4A_i(A_i^2 - 3B_j^2) \tan^{-1}(A_i/B_j) \quad (25)$$

Equations 12-25 inclusive afford calculation of the derivatives occurring in the double summations defining f_D and f_P . For the case of two rectangular areas located as in Fig. 2, the specific equations are obtained as follows. For this case:

$$A_1 = d + 2c; \quad A_2 = d + c; \quad A_3 = d; \quad A_4 = d + c \\ B_1 = b; \quad B_2 = 0; \quad B_3 = b; \quad B_4 = 0 \quad (26)$$

Substitution of equation 26 in equation 13 and therefrom in equation 12 yields

$$b^2 c^2 \log D_{12} = -(25/12) / b^2 c^2 + \\ (1/24) [6b^2(d+2c)^2 - (d+2c)^4 - b^4] \log [(d+2c)^2 + b^2] - \\ (1/12) [6b^2(d+c)^2 - (d+c)^4 - b^4] \log [(d+c)^2 + b^2] + \\ (1/24) (6b^2 d^2 - d^4 - b^4) \log(d^2 + b^2) + \\ (1/24) (d+2c)^4 \log(d+2c)^2 - \\ (1/12) (d+c)^4 \log(d+c)^2 + \\ (1/24) (d)^4 \log d^2 + \\ (b/3) (d+2c)^3 \tan^{-1} b/(d+2c) - \\ (b^3/3) (d+2c) \tan^{-1} b/(d+2c) + \\ (2b/3) (d+c) \tan^{-1} b/(d+c) - \\ (2b^3/3) (d+c) \tan^{-1} b/(d+c) - \\ (1/3) b^3 d \tan^{-1}(b/d) + \\ (1/3) b d^3 \tan^{-1}(b/d) \quad (27)$$

Substitution of equation 26 in equation 23 and therefrom in equation 22 yields

$$b^2 c^2 \partial(\log D_{12}) / \partial d = + (1/24) [12b^2(d+2c) - 4(d+2c)^3] \log [(d+2c)^2 + b^2] - \\ (1/12) [12b^2(d+c) - 4(d+c)^3] \log [(d+c)^2 + b^2] + \\ (1/24) [12b^2 d - 4d^3] \log(d^2 + b^2) + \\ (1/24) [4(d+2c)^3] \log(d+2c)^2 - \\ (1/12) [4(d+c)^3] \log(d+c)^2 + \\ (1/24) [4d^3] \log d^2 + \\ b(d+2c)^2 \tan^{-1} b/(d+2c) + \\ (b^3/3) \tan^{-1}(d+2c)/b - \\ 2b(d+c)^2 \tan^{-1} b/(d+c) - \\ (2b^3/3) \tan^{-1}(d+c)/b + b d^2 \tan^{-1}(b/d) + (b^3/3) \tan^{-1}(d/b) \quad (28)$$

Simplified Equations

By well-established theory, the mutual electromagnetic force exerted between two

long isolated nonpermeable conductors spaced D_{ij} centimeters between the parallel axes and carrying currents I_i and I_j amperes, is

$$f_{ij} = 2k_{ij} I_i I_j / D_{ij} \text{ dynes per cm of bus length} \quad (29)$$

Here k is a parameter, usually termed the electromagnetic space factor, of magnitude determined by the geometry and relative position of the cross sections of the two conductors. For identical conductor cross sections located as in Fig. 2 the electromagnetic factor is

$$k = D^2 / (rs - RS)^2 [M(r, s) + M(R, S) + 2M(R+T, T) + 2M(t, S+T) - 2M(R+T, S+T) - 2M(T, T)] \quad (30)$$

where $M(r, s)$ is defined by

$$M(r, s) / r^2 = 2m \tan^{-1} m - \log(1+m^2) + n^2 m^2 / 6(1+m^2) + n^4 / 90 [1 + (-1+3m^2)/(1+m^2)^3] + \dots \quad (31)$$

and $m = s/D$, $n = r/D$.

A form of $M(r, s)$, especially convenient to speedy, accurate numerical computation, is afforded by expanding the term of the right-hand member of equation 29 in powers of m through use of

$$\tan^{-1} m = m - m^3/3 + m^5/5 - m^7/7 + \dots, \text{ for } m^2 < 1 \quad (32)$$

$$\tan^{-1} m = \pi/2 - 1/m + 1/3m^3 - 1/5m^5 + \dots, \text{ for } m^2 > 1 \quad (33)$$

$$\log(1+m^2) = 2m^2/(2+m^2) + 2/3[m^2/(2+m^2)]^3 + 2/5[m^2/(2+m^2)]^5 + \dots, \text{ for } (1+m^2) > 0 \quad (34)$$

and then combining use of equation 30 with equation 34 and a proper choice of equation 32 or 33. If $R=S=0$, the conductors are of full cross section and equation 30 reduces to

$$k = (D^2 / r^2 s^2) M(r, s) \quad (35)$$

If $r=3$ the conductors are of full-square

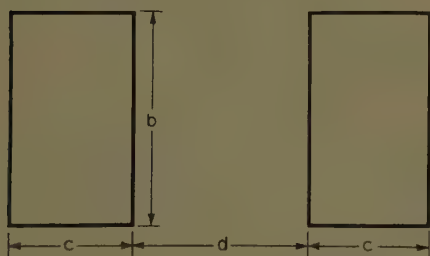


Fig. 2. Cross section of bus comprised of rectangular conductors

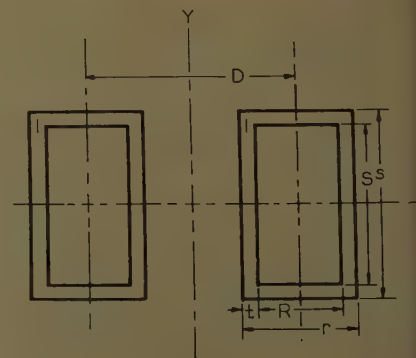


Fig. 3. Cross section of bus comprised of tubular rectangular conductors

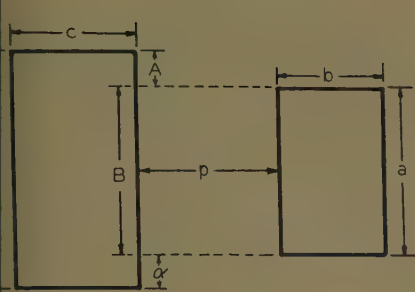


Fig. 4 (left). Two symmetrically located parallel-sided rectangular areas

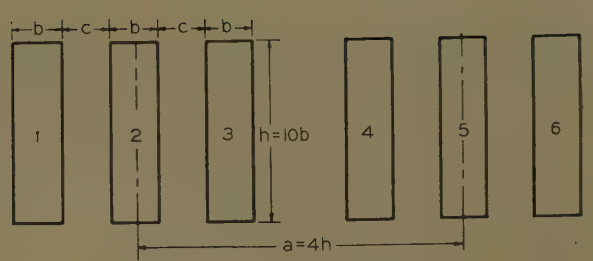


Fig. 5 (right). Cross section of triply divided conductor single-phase bus

cross section and equation 35 further reduces to $k = (D^2/r^4)M(r,r)$ where, in expression of $M(r,r)$ by equation 31, $m = s/D = r/D$. As all terms comprising are dimensionless, the linear dimensions of the bus can be expressed in any desired arbitrary like unit of length.

Approximate Equations

If the width of each conductor or sub-conductor is small compared with its height, as is often the case in practice, it is to be expected that a good approximation to the force acting on an individual conductor, and hence the total force on the bus, can be obtained by letting the conductor width approach zero and computing the approximate force acting on the corresponding "line-segment" conductors. For a bus with cross section as in Fig. 2, equation 35 yields

$$k'_{ij} = \lim_{r \rightarrow 0} (D_{ij}^2/r^2 s^2) M(r,s) = (D_{ij}^2/s^2) \lim_{r \rightarrow 0} M(r,s)/r^2 \quad (36)$$

Since $n = r/D$ approaches zero as r approaches zero, equation 31 gives

$$\lim_{r \rightarrow 0} M(r,s)/r^2 = 2m \tan^{-1} m - \log(1+m^2) \quad (37)$$

and substitution accordingly in equation 36 yields the corresponding expression for the electromagnetic space factor as

$$k'_{ij} = (D_{ij}^2/s^2) [2m \tan^{-1} m - \log(1+m^2)] \quad (38)$$

Accordingly, the mutual electromagnetic force between two line-segment conductors carrying currents I_i and I_j , as given by equations 29 and 38, is

$$f'_{ij} = 2k'_{ij} I_i I_j / D_{ij} \text{ dynes per cm of bus length} \quad (39)$$

In conclusion, it is to be emphasized that in determining the value of the electromagnetic space factor k through use of equation 38 it is necessary that the cross sections of the conductors possess two principal axes of symmetry whose intersection fixes the "center" of the conductors and thus the distance between them—as is the case for all the bus configurations considered in this paper.

Check of Analysis by Use of Gray's Equation

In Rosa's paper,⁸ Gray's corrected equation for the geometric mean distance of symmetrically located rectangles as in Fig. 4 is given as

$$\begin{aligned} abcd \log D = & 1/4[(p+b+c)^2 B^2 - (p+b+c)^2/6 - B^4/6] \log [(p+b+c)^2 + B^2] - \\ & 1/4[(p+b)^2 B^2 - (p+b)^2/6 - B^4/6] \log [(p+b)^2 + B^2] - \\ & 1/4[(p+c)^2 B^2 - (p+c)^2/6 - B^4/6] \log [(p+c)^2 + B^2] + 1/4[p^2 B^2 - \\ & p^2/6 - B^4/6] \log (p^2 + B^2) - \text{(the same series of terms with } B \text{ replaced by } A) + \\ & (B/3)(p+b+c)^3 \tan^{-1} B/(p+b+c) + (B^3/3)(p+b+c) \tan^{-1} (p+b+c)/B - \\ & (B/3)(p+b)^3 \tan^{-1} (p+b)/B - (B/3)(p+c)^3 \tan^{-1} (p+c)/B - \\ & (B/3)p^3 \tan^{-1} p/B + (B^3/3)p \tan^{-1} p/B - \text{(the same series of terms with } B \text{ replaced by } A) - \\ & (B^2 - A^2)/8[(p+b+c)^2 - (p+b)^2 - (p+c)^2 + p^2] - (11/6)abcd \quad (40) \end{aligned}$$

where D is the geometric mean distance between the rectangles, p is the distance between rectangles, and $A = (d-a)/2$, $B = (d+a)/2$. For the case of two identical rectangles, as shown in Fig. 2, $p = d$, $b = c$, $a = b$, $c = c$, $d = b$, $A = 0$, $B = b$; correspondingly, equation 40 yields

$$\begin{aligned} b^2 c^2 \log D = & (1/24)[6b^2(d+2c)^2 - (d+2c)^4 - b^4] \log [(d+2c)^2 + b^2] - \\ & (1/12)[6b^2(d+c)^2 - (d+c)^4 - b^4] \log [(d+c)^2 + b^2] + \\ & (1/24)[6b^2 d^2 - d^4 - b^4] \log (d^2 + b^2) + \\ & (1/24)(d+2c)^4 \log (d+2c)^2 - \\ & (1/12)(d+c)^4 \log (d+c)^2 + \\ & (1/24)d^4 \log d^2 + \\ & (b/3)(d+2c)^3 \tan^{-1} b/(d+2c) + \\ & (b^3/3)(d+2c) \tan^{-1} (d+2c)/b - \\ & (2b/3)(d+c)^3 \tan^{-1} b/(d+c) - \\ & (2b^3/3)(d+c) \tan^{-1} (d+c)/b + \\ & (b/3)d^3 \tan^{-1} b/d + (b^3/3)d \tan^{-1} d/b - (25/12)b^2 c^2 \quad (41) \end{aligned}$$

Confirmatively, this equation agrees with equation 27.

Differentiating the members of equation 41 with respect to d , gives

$$\begin{aligned} b^2 c^2 \partial(\log D)/\partial d = & (1/24)[12b^2(d+2c) - 4(d+2c)^3] \log [(d+2c)^2 + b^2] - \\ & (1/12)[12b^2(d+c) - 4(d+c)^3] \log [(d+c)^2 + b^2] + \\ & (1/24)[12b^2 d - 4d^3] \log (d^2 + b^2) + \\ & (1/24)[4(d+2c)^3] \log (d+2c)^2 - \\ & (1/12)[4(d+c)^3] \log (d+c)^2 + \\ & (1/24)[4d^3] \log d^2 + \\ & b(d+2c)^2 \tan^{-1} b/(d+2c) + \\ & (b^3/3) \tan^{-1} (d+2c)/b - \\ & 2b(d+c)^2 \tan^{-1} b/(d+c) - \\ & (2b^3/3) \tan^{-1} (d+c)/b + \\ & bd^2 \tan^{-1} b/d + (b^3/3) \tan^{-1} d/b \quad (42) \end{aligned}$$

Corroboratively, equation 42 agrees with equation 28. This agreement of equations 27 and 28 with, respectively, equations 41 and 42 provides confirmation of the correctness of the two general expressions and of the validity of the analysis underlying each of them.

Dimensional Units

In derivation of the basic quantities in the foregoing, convenience stems from taking all quantities in the absolute system: linear dimension in centimeters, current in abamperes, inductance in abhenrys per centimeter of bus length, energy in ergs per centimeter of bus length, and force in dynes per centimeter of bus length. As all terms in the expressions for the electromagnetic space factor k are dimensionless, the cross-sectional dimensions of the bus and conductor can be expressed in any convenient like unit of length. In particular, it is often convenient to express the bus dimensions in inches, the unit commonly used in American and British bus-conductor handbooks and/or sales manuals.

First Illustrative Example

SUBCONDUCTOR CURRENTS

In illustration of application of the general theory derived in the foregoing consider analysis of the triply subdivided

conductor single-phase bus of Fig. 5. Each conductor is comprised of three identical subconductors. The bus dimensions are $b=c=1$ cm (centimeters), $h=10b=10$ cm, and $a=4h=40$ cm. This bus is that of the first illustrative example in reference 5. The rather lengthy calculations detailed therein⁵ yield the currents as

$$\begin{aligned} I_1 &= -I_6 = (35.11 + j5.33)I; \\ I_2 &= -I_5 = (18.75 - j14.75)I; \\ I_3 &= -I_4 = (46.14 + j9.42)I \quad (43) \end{aligned}$$

whereof $100I$ is the (normalized) phase current.

DETERMINATION OF ELECTROMAGNETIC SPACE FACTORS

The space factors of each subconductor with respect to the other five subconductors, as calculated from equations 30 and 31, are

$$\begin{aligned} k_{12} &= k_{21} = k_{23} = k_{32} = k_{45} = k_{54} = k_{56} = k_{65} = \\ &0.4605 \\ k_{13} &= k_{31} = k_{46} = k_{64} = 0.6365 \\ k_{14} &= k_{41} = k_{25} = k_{52} = k_{36} = k_{63} = 0.9899 \\ k_{15} &= k_{51} = k_{26} = k_{62} = 0.9903 \\ k_{16} &= k_{61} = 0.9935 \\ k_{24} &= k_{42} = k_{35} = k_{53} = 0.9896 \\ k_{34} &= k_{43} = 0.9814 \end{aligned}$$

With all space factors thus in hand, determination of the forces exerted on each subconductor is easily effected.

DETERMINATION OF FORCES

Introducing in equation 29 the pertinent values of space factor, conductor currents, and conductor spacing yields the mutual force between two specified subconductors of the bus of Fig. 5. Thus, calculating accordingly for subconductor 1 gives

$$f_{12} = (339.3563 - j192.4591)I^2 \text{ dynes/cm of bus length}$$

$$f_{13} = (449.5783 + j183.5228)I^2$$

$$f_{14} = (-77.7022 - j28.5419)I^2$$

$$f_{15} = (-34.7536 + j19.7098)I^2$$

$$f_{16} = (-54.3863 - j16.9024)I^2$$

The total force exerted on subconductor 1, as obtained by summing the five component forces, is

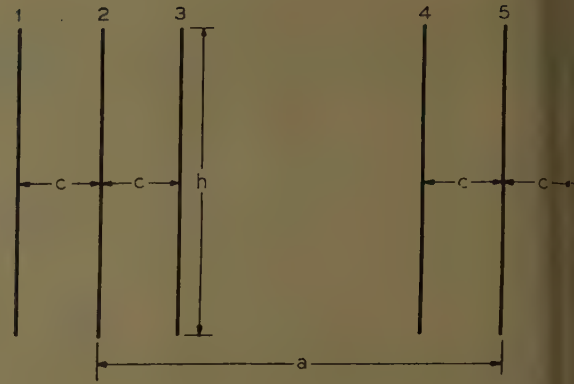
$$\begin{aligned} f_1 &= f_{12} + f_{13} + f_{14} + f_{15} + f_{16} = \\ &[672.0925 - j34.6708]I^2 \text{ dynes/cm of bus length} \quad (44) \end{aligned}$$

Similar procedure yields the force exerted subconductor 2. Thus

$$f_{23} = 2k_{23}I_2I_3/D_{23} = (462.3742 - j232.0644)I^2 \text{ dynes/cm of bus length}$$

$$f_{24} = 2k_{24}I_2I_4/D_{24} = (-52.2960 + j26.2472)I^2$$

Fig. 6 Cross section of triply subdivided conductor single-phase line-segment bus



$$f_{25} = 2k_{25}I_2I_5/D_{25} = (-6.6323 + j27.3769)I^2$$

Noting that the forces exerted between two current-carrying elements are opposite in direction and equal in magnitude, and that by symmetry the values of currents and space factors for calculating f_{26} are the same as those for calculating f_{15} , yields

$$f_{21} = -f_{12} = (-339.3563 + j192.4591)I^2 \text{ dynes/cm of bus length}$$

$$f_{26} = f_{15} = (-34.7536 + j19.7098)I^2$$

Summing component values yields the total force exerted on subconductor 2 is

$$f_2 = (29.3360 + j33.7286)I^2 \text{ dynes/cm of bus length} \quad (45)$$

The component forces exerted on subconductors 3, 4, 5, and 6 are to be obtained in the same fashion. Proceeding accordingly gives the total forces exerted on these subconductors as

$$f_3 = (-1203.1845 - j1.1459)I^2 \text{ dynes/cm of bus length} \quad (46)$$

$$f_4 = (1203.1845 + 1.1459)I^2 \quad (47)$$

$$f_5 = (-29.3360 - j33.7286)I^2 \quad (48)$$

$$f_6 = (-672.0925 + j34.6708)I^2 \quad (49)$$

It is of interest to note that f_1 and f_6 are of the same magnitude, but differ 180 degrees in angular phase. Such is also true of f_2 and f_5 and of f_3 and f_4 . This expected contrasymmetry of forces provides a check on the accuracy calculation. Obviously in practice it can be utilized also to halve the actually needed calculation. Finally, the short-circuit forces on the two bus supports can be obtained by summing each set of forces. Thus, equations 44, 45, and 46 yield

$$f_1 + f_2 + f_3 = (-501.7560 - j2.0881)I^2 \text{ dynes/cm of bus length} \quad (50)$$

and equations 47, 48, and 49 yield

$$f_4 + f_5 + f_6 = (501.7560 + j2.0881)I^2 \text{ dynes/cm of bus length} \quad (51)$$

Equations 50 and 51 evidence that the horizontal forces exerted on the bus

support are equal in magnitude and oppositely directed, as is to be expected from the symmetry of the bus about the horizontal plane through the axes of the subconductors.

Approximation by Line-Segment Conductors

A check on the accuracy of the values obtained in the previous section and insight as to the accuracy of final values and amount of reduction of numerical labor afforded by use of line-segment approximation stems from analysis of the bus of Fig. 6 by use of equations 38 and 39.

Thus, from equation 38 the space factors of each subconductor with respect to the other five subconductors are

$$\begin{aligned} k'_{12} &= k'_{21} = k'_{23} = k'_{32} = k'_{45} = k'_{54} \\ &= k'_{56} = k'_{65} = 0.458 \end{aligned}$$

$$k'_{13} = k'_{31} = k'_{46} = k'_{64} = 0.6350$$

$$k'_{14} = k'_{41} = k'_{25} = k'_{52} = k'_{36} = k'_{63} = 0.9898$$

$$k'_{15} = k'_{51} = k'_{26} = k'_{62} = 0.9902$$

$$k'_{16} = k'_{61} = 0.9934$$

$$k'_{42} = k'_{24} = k'_{35} = k'_{53} = 0.9895$$

$$k'_{34} = k'_{43} = 0.9812$$

Introducing in equation 39 the approximate values of space factor, conductor currents and conductor spacing and summing appropriately gives the total force on the subconductors as

$$f'_1 = -f'_6 = (669.8058 - j34.4301)I^2 \text{ dynes/cm of bus length} \quad (52)$$

$$f'_2 = -f'_5 = (28.9188 + j33.8575)I^2 \quad (53)$$

$$f'_3 = -f'_4 = (-1200.4026 - j1.5138)I^2 \quad (54)$$

Finally, the short-circuit forces on the two bus supports are

$$f'_1 + f'_2 + f'_3 = (-501.6780 - j2.0594)I^2 \text{ dynes/cm of bus length} \quad (55)$$

$$f'_4 + f'_5 + f'_6 = (501.6780 + j2.0594)I^2 \quad (56)$$

Corroborative of the correctness of ca

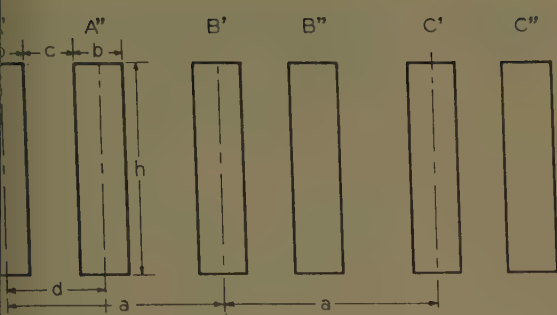
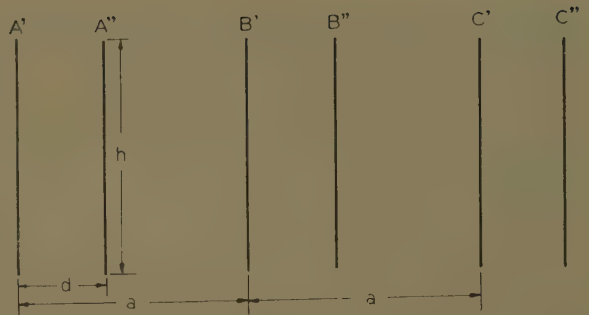


Fig. 7 (left).
Cross section of
doubly divided
conductor 3-
phase bus

Fig. 8 (right).
Cross section of
"equivalent" rec-
tangular 3-phase
bus



ation, these two total forces are equal magnitude and oppositely directed.

Comparison of Exact and Approximate Values

The short-circuit forces exerted on the bus supports, as stated in equations 55 and 56 for the bus of Fig. 6, are in excellent agreement with the corresponding values of equations 50 and 51 for the bus of Fig. 5. This excellent agreement evidences that the width of the strap conductors has little effect on the magnitudes of the short-circuit forces exerted on the bus supports—in so long as this width is small in comparison with the height of the conductors and the distances between conductors. As such often occurs in practice, it follows that the simpler calculation based on line-segment approximation will commonly suffice for design purposes.

Second Illustrative Example

In illustration of analysis pertinent to polyphase busses consider the doubly divided conductor 3-phase bus typified in Fig. 7. Each phase is comprised of two identical subconductors. The bus dimensions are $a=6.67$ cm, $b=c=0.635$ cm, $d=1.27$ cm, $h=10.16$ cm. The currents in the subconductors, as determined in reference 5, are

$$\begin{aligned} I_{A'} &= (0.5218 - j0.0674)I; \\ I_{B'} &= (-0.2967 - j0.4389)I; \\ I_{C'} &= (-0.2860 + j0.4221)I \end{aligned} \quad (57)$$

$$\begin{aligned} I_{A''} &= (0.4782 + j0.0674)I; \\ I_{B''} &= (-0.2033 - j0.4271)I; \\ I_{C''} &= (-0.2140 + j0.4439)I \end{aligned} \quad (58)$$

Calculation as in the foregoing yields the forces exerted on the subconductor as

$$\begin{aligned} f_{A'} &= (0.0306 - j0.0271)I^2; \\ f_{B'} &= (0.1312 + j0.2052)I^2; \\ f_{C'} &= (-0.1459 - j0.1731)I^2 \end{aligned} \quad (59)$$

$$\begin{aligned} f_{A''} &= (-0.2094 - j0.0591)I^2; \\ f_{B''} &= (0.2235 + j0.0025)I^2; \\ f_{C''} &= (-0.0300 + j0.0516)I^2 \end{aligned} \quad (60)$$

The short-circuit forces exerted on the bus supports, as obtained by summing the forces acting on the two subconductors comprising each phase, are

$$f_A = f_{A'} + f_{A''} = (-0.1788 - j0.0862)I^2 \text{ dynes/cm of bus length} \quad (61)$$

$$f_B = f_{B'} + f_{B''} = (0.3547 + j0.2077)I^2 \quad (62)$$

$$f_C = f_{C'} + f_{C''} = (-0.1759 - j0.1215)I^2 \quad (63)$$

In check of these values and to gain insight as to the degree of accuracy and amount of reduction of numerical work afforded by use of line-segment approximation, consider analysis of the bus of Fig. 8. Calculation as in the foregoing yields the short-circuit forces exerted on the bus supports of phases A, B, and C as

$$f'_A = f_{A'} + f_{A''} = (-0.1781 - j0.0854)I^2 \text{ dynes/cm of bus length} \quad (64)$$

$$f'_B = f_{B'} + f_{B''} = (0.3535 + j0.2068)I^2 \quad (65)$$

$$f'_C = f_{C'} + f_{C''} = (-0.1751 - j0.1214)I^2 \quad (66)$$

A second procedure which provides approximate values of the total force acting on each bus support is to consider the two subconductors of one conductor as approximated by a single conductor with cross-sectional area equal to the total of the two conductors and carrying the total current of the two conductors, as indicated in Fig. 9.

The currents in conductors A, B, and C are $I_A = I_{A'} + I_{A''} = Ie^{j0}$, $I_B = I_{B'} + I_{B''} = Ie^{-j120}$ and $I_C = I_{C'} + I_{C''} = Ie^{j120}$. Substituting the appropriate values of space factors, conductor currents, and conductor

spacings in equation 29 yields the mutual forces between any two specified conductors. Summing these gives the total forces exerted on conductors A, B, and C as

$$f_A = f_{AB} + f_{AC} = (-0.1933 - j0.0952)I^2 \text{ dynes/cm of bus length} \quad (67)$$

$$f_B = f_{BA} + f_{BC} = (0.3732 + j0.2149)I^2 \quad (68)$$

$$f_C = f_{CA} + f_{CB} = (-0.1790 - j0.1197)I^2 \quad (69)$$

These values are in good agreement with the corresponding values of equations 61, 62 and 63. This agreement evidences the general validity and usefulness of this second approximate mode of calculation. Further, the numerical work required to obtain these values is yet much less than is required to obtain the "approximate" line-segment values of equations 64, 65 and 66 (which, in turn, were obtained by much less labor than the almost equal "exact" values).

Three-Phase Paired-Phase Arrangement

Fisher and Frank¹¹ show by detailed analysis and experimental investigation that the paired-phase arrangement of Fig. 10 is superior to more conventional arrangements (such as the interlaced bus Fig. 7), for transmitting low-voltage polyphase currents in the range of 1,000 amperes, at 600 volts or less. As this type of bus has come into very considerable use, it is of interest to compare the relative magnitudes of the forces acting on the

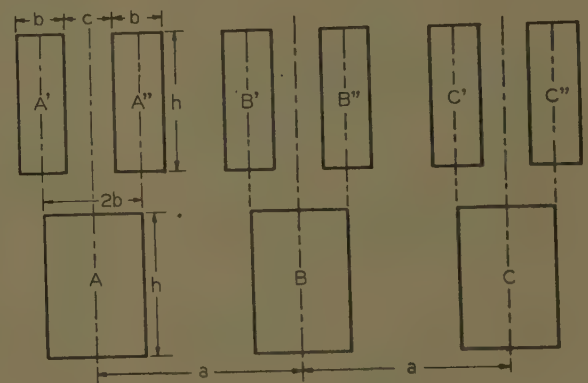


Fig. 9. Cross section of
"equivalent" rectangular 3-
phase bus

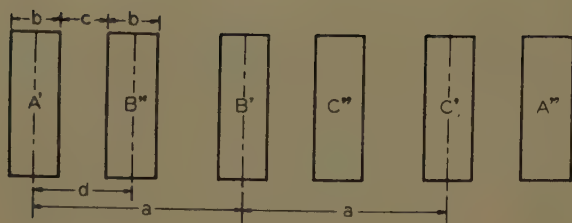


Fig. 10. Cross section of doubly divided conductor paired-phase 3-phase bus

supports of the typical 3-phase paired-phase bus of Fig. 10 with the corresponding values for the similarly rated interlaced bus of Fig. 7.

Calculation effects in the same manner as for the foregoing polyphase busses (the numerical details are given in reference 10) yields

$$\begin{aligned} I_{A'} &= (0.4092 + j0.2458)I; \\ I_{B'} &= (-0.0358 - j0.4410)I; \\ I_{C'} &= (-0.3954 + j0.1789)I \quad (70) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} I_{A''} &= (0.5908 - j0.2458)I; \\ I_{B''} &= (-0.4642 - j0.4250)I; \\ I_{C''} &= (-0.1046 + j0.6871)I \quad (71) \end{aligned}$$

It is to be noted that the currents in each closely spaced pair of subconductors (i.e., $A'-B''$, $B'-C''$, and $C'-A''$) are nearly equal and opposite; whence the external magnetic field produced by each pair of conductors is relatively weak—which fact accounts for the lower reactance voltage drops on a bus of this type, as compared with the corresponding values of an interlaced bus of the same current rating.

The effective force acting on each sub-conductor is

$$\begin{aligned} f_{A'} &= (-0.0524 - j0.1248)I^2; \\ f_{B'} &= (0.1124 + j0.2050)I^2; \\ f_{C'} &= (0.0352 - j0.2231)I^2 \quad (72) \\ f_{A''} &= (-0.1836 + j0.1206)I^2; \\ f_{B''} &= (0.2579 + j0.0442)I^2; \\ f_{C''} &= (-0.1695 - j0.0219)I^2 \quad (73) \end{aligned}$$

and summing yields the force on the bus support of each pair as

$$f_{1s} = f_{A'} + f_{B''} = (0.2054 - j0.0806)I^2 \text{ dynes/cm of bus length} \quad (74)$$

$$f_{2s} = f_{B'} + f_{C''} = (-0.0571 + j0.1831)I^2 \quad (75)$$

$$f_{3s} = f_{C'} + f_{A''} = (-0.1484 - j0.1025)I^2 \quad (76)$$

Comparison of the magnitudes of these forces with the corresponding values of equations 61, 62, and 63 for the interlaced bus of Fig. 7 reveals, as is to be expected, somewhat smaller forces on the paired-phase bus supports.

Finally, calculation ignoring the resistance of the conductors yields

$$f_{1s} = (0.1724 - j0.1591)I^2 \text{ dynes/cm of bus length} \quad (77)$$

$$f_{2s} = (-0.0082 + j0.3034)I^2 \quad (78)$$

$$f_{3s} = (-0.1642 - j0.1443)I^2 \quad (79)$$

Comparison of the values of equations 74, 75, and 76 with corresponding values of equations 77, 78, and 79 evidences that the resistance of the conductors has an appreciable effect on the values of the forces (as is to be expected because of minimization of mutual reactance in virtue of the weak linking fields). However, the magnitudes of corresponding forces are yet in fair agreement. Accordingly, this example illustrates that in calculation of short-circuit forces, the resistance associated with the conductors can usually be ignored and calculation effected on the basis of inductive reactance alone, with a consequent considerable reduction of numerical labor. Primarily, this reduction occurs in the computation necessary to determination of the conductor currents.

Conclusion

1. General equations are derived for calculating the short-circuit forces associated with each subconductor, conductor, and bus support of a multiple-strap subdivided-conductor single-phase or polyphase bus.

2. Although use of these general equations is too time-consuming for common appreciation in practice, they afford both derivation of approximate equations convenient to use in practice and a means of ascertaining the degree of accuracy of the numerical values stemming from these approximate equations.

3. The short-circuit forces exerted on the bus supports of the triply divided bus of Fig. 5, as calculated from the general equations, are in excellent agreement with those calculated by the two approximate procedures. Such is also true for the doubly divided 3-phase bus of Fig. 7. These agreements evidence that ignoring the width of strap conductors has little effect on the calculated magnitudes of the short-circuit forces exerted on conductors and bus supports if the conductor width is small compared with the conductor height and major distances between conductors.

4. The magnitudes of the calculated associated forces are substantially the

same for both phase sequences.¹⁰ Similar evidences that either sequence can be chosen in design calculation.

5. The magnitudes of the short-circuit forces exerted on the bus supports of a triply divided bus of Fig. 10, calculated by ignoring the conductor resistance, are in fair agreement with those calculated taking conductor resistance into consideration. This degree of agreement evidences that for most design purposes, conductor resistance can usually be ignored and calculation of short-circuit forces effected on the basis of inductive reactance alone, with a consequent considerable reduction in the numerical labor involved in calculation.

References

1. FORMULAS FOR CALCULATING SHORT-CIRCUIT FORCES BETWEEN CONDUCTORS OF STRUCTURAL SHAPE, Thomas James Higgins. *AIEE Transactions*, vol. 62, Oct. 1943, pp. 659-63.
2. THE DESIGN OF BUS-BAR INDUSTRIAL DISTRIBUTION SYSTEMS: AN EPITOMIZATION OF AVAILABLE DATA, T. J. Higgins. *Ibid.*, vol. 64, 1945, pp. 385-400; discussion, pp. 486-88.
3. EQUATIONS FOR THE INDUCTANCE AND SHORT-CIRCUIT FORCES OF BUSES COMPRISED OF DOUBLY DIVIDED CHANNEL CONDUCTORS, C. M. Siegel, T. J. Higgins. *Ibid.*, pt. III (*Power Apparatus and Systems*), 71, Jan. 1952, pp. 522-31.
4. ENCLOSED BUS-BAR ELECTRICAL DISTRIBUTION SYSTEMS FOR INDUSTRIAL PLANTS, E. Carlson. *Ibid.*, vol. 60, June 1941, pp. 297-301; discussion by O. R. Schurig, pp. 700-01; also latter's discussion of reference 3, pp. 530-31.
5. EQUATIONS FOR THE INDUCTANCES AND CURRENT DISTRIBUTION OF MULTIPLE-CONDUCTOR SINGLE-PHASE AND POLYPHASE BUSES, T. H. Chin, T. J. Higgins. *Ibid.*, pt. I (*Communication and Electronics*), vol. 76, Nov. 1957, pp. 553-58.
6. FORMULAS FOR THE GEOMETRIC MEAN DISTANCES OF RECTANGULAR AREAS AND OF LINE SEGMENTS, T. J. Higgins. *Journal of Applied Physics*, New York, N. Y., vol. 14, 1943, pp. 188-91.
7. FORMULAS FOR THE CALCULATION OF THE INDUCTANCE OF LINEAR CONDUCTORS OF STRUCTURAL SHAPE, Thomas James Higgins. *AIEE Transactions*, vol. 62, Feb. 1943, pp. 53-57.
8. ON THE GEOMETRIC MEAN DISTANCES OF RECTANGULAR AREAS AND THE CALCULATION OF SELF-INDUCTANCE, E. B. Rosa. *Bulletin, Bureau of Standards*, Washington, D. C., vol. 3, 1907, pp. 42-43.
9. EQUATIONS FOR THE REACTANCE AND CURRENT DISTRIBUTION OF MULTIPLE-STRAP SINGLE-PHASE AND POLYPHASE BUSES, T. H. Chin, M.S. Thesis, University of Wisconsin, Madison, Wis., June 1953.
10. EQUATIONS FOR SHORT-CIRCUIT FORCES OF MULTIPLE-STRAP SINGLE-PHASE AND POLYPHASE BUSES FOR SUPPLYING LOW-FREQUENCY INDUCTION FURNACES, T. H. Chin. *Ph.D. Thesis*, University of Wisconsin, June 1954.
11. PAIRED-PHASE BUS BARS FOR LARGE POLYPHASE CURRENTS, L. E. Fisher, R. L. Frank. *AIEE Transactions*, vol. 62, Feb. 1943, pp. 71-77.

Discussion

Lawrence E. Fisher (General Electric Company, Plainville, Conn.): It is helpful to learn that the more rigorous calculation of the forces on bus bars is in close agreement with the more simple calculations within the defined limits.

take this opportunity to ask the authors if they have made any calculations or would like to make general comments on the forces to be expected on an interlaced base bus bar structure with 12 2-inch bus bars on 3/4-inch centers, for example, with the phase bars arranged CAB'ABCABC.

Tests appear to indicate that the forces, especially on many of the inner bars, are surprisingly low. Theoretically, since any such as bar B' has about as many bars to it on the left as on the right side, it is reasonable to expect that the forces would be at least partially cancelled. The

discusser should like to have the authors make comments on these points based on their previous studies.

T. H. Chin and T. J. Higgins: The authors express their appreciation of the complimentary comment by Mr. Fisher. They agree with his remark that it is to be expected that forces on the interior bars of the described arrangement ought to be relatively low. It would not be difficult, though lengthy, to calculate approximately the actual forces on a bar in the arrangement cited, using theory set out in the

paper, though the authors have not done so.

If such were done, the authors could expect to find relatively low forces for the reason he indicates. Namely, that these bars lie in a relatively weak field because of partial mutual cancellation, at a bar such as B', of the "net" flux produced by the currents in the bars to the left and of that produced by the currents in the bars to the right. Also, it may well be that the actual current carried by such bars is reduced beyond those in the outer bars in the nonuniform distribution of currents that actually results in such an interlaced arrangement of numerous bars.

An Analysis of the Dynamics of an Electromechanical System

ROY HYINK
ASSOCIATE MEMBER AIEE

Synopsis: This paper describes a method for the accurate computation of the dynamic operating characteristics of an electromechanical system such as a relay or solenoid or other electromagnetic device. This method is based upon the principle of conservation of energy and is particularly useful in systems where energy is transformed from one form to one or more other forms. While an a-c-operated contactor or relay will be used to demonstrate the method in this paper, the method is not restricted to this type of device only, but can be applied to any type of dynamic system. This type of approach is one which is possible and practical because digital computers can be used to do the calculations in a reasonable length of time.

IN MANY AREAS of design, the static characteristics of a system are used as the basis of design because these characteristics can be calculated from the sketches or drawings from which the system is to be made. Many times the analysis of the dynamic operation of the system is delayed until actual models have been constructed. Sometimes the model which will perform satisfactorily under slow-speed or static conditions will not produce the proper performance when the system is operating under normal conditions. This paper will attempt to outline a method of procedure which can

be used to analyze the dynamic performance of an electromechanical system before any models have been constructed.

In the case of electromagnetic relays and contactors, this dynamic analysis has always appeared very difficult and time-consuming. Therefore, the study of dynamic operating conditions has been delayed until actual working models of the device have been built. In the past, engineers were not too concerned with the dynamic performance of electromagnetic relays and contactors because, in most applications, the operating times were not of importance in over-all system design, and the electrical and mechanical life requirements of such devices were not too severe. However, in recent years, engineers have been more and more concerned about such factors as operating time, mechanical life, electrical life of the contacts, and general shock resistance of the over-all device. Thus a need has arisen for methods of analysis of the dynamic operating conditions of relays and electromagnets.

The operation of any electromechanical system can be described by analyzing the energy relations which exist in the system. The total energy input to the system must equal the energy output, plus the losses within the system, plus the energy stored in the system. This is merely a restatement of the principle of conservation of energy, but it can become a powerful basic tool in the analysis of any electromechanical system. In a system such as an electromagnet which converts electric to mechanical energy, the energy input is

electric, the energy output is the work done, the losses result in heating, and the stored energy is mechanical and magnetic. These energy relations for an a-c-operated electromagnet are shown in Fig. 1.

Nomenclature

The symbols given here are those used within the main body of this paper.

- e = instantaneous voltage applied to coil
- E = rms value of the applied voltage ($e = \sqrt{2} E \sin \omega t$)
- F_f = moving friction force
- F_s = static friction force
- F_L = force exerted by the load against which the magnet is working
- F_M = force developed by the magnet
- G_0 = total initial magnetic gap
- G = magnetic gap at any time ($G = G_0 - X$)
- i_c = instantaneous coil current
- i_e = equivalent current representing eddy current and hysteresis losses
- i_s = equivalent instantaneous secondary coil current
- i = net instantaneous current producing a magnetic field ($i = i_c - i_e - i_s$)
- I = rms value of coil current
- Δi_c = increment of coil current during time, Δt
- m = mass of moving parts
- N = total turns on main coil
- Φ = permeance of magnetic circuit
- R_c = coil resistance
- R_e = equivalent resistance of iron circuit to eddy current flow
- R_t = equivalent resistance of all resistances coupled magnetically to main coil ($1/R_t = 1/R_e + 1/R_s$)
- R_s = equivalent resistance of secondary coils
- t = time
- Δt = small fixed increment of time
- Δt_f = final time increment for movement from last calculated gap to seal
- V = velocity of moving magnet armature
- ΔV = change of velocity occurring during time, Δt
- W_e = total heat generated in coil before Δt interval
- W_e = total electric energy put into system before Δt interval
- W_f = total heat generated by friction before Δt interval
- W_L = total work done on load before Δt interval
- X = distance magnet armature has moved from original position

Paper 60-636, recommended by the AIEE Industrial Control Committee and approved by the AIEE Technical Operations Department for presentation at the AIEE Great Lakes District Meeting, Milwaukee, Wis., April 27-29, 1960. Manuscript submitted January 14, 1960; made available for printing March 7, 1960.

ROY HYINK is with Cutler-Hammer, Inc., Milwaukee, Wis.



Fig. 1. Energy relations during the closure of an a-c electromagnet

ΔX = magnet armature movement during time Δt
 Φ = total flux in a magnet
 θ = value of ωt when magnet is energized

Discussion

It should be possible to set up a mathematical expression defining each quantity enclosed within a separate box as in Fig. 1. If it is possible to write mathematical expressions for these various quantities, then Fig. 1 can be converted into a mathematical equation. All of the expressions shown in the boxes in Fig. 1, with the exception of the energy stored in the magnetic field and the kinetic energy in the moving parts, are integral expressions. Therefore, these expressions must be evaluated from the time that the magnet was originally energized. If some point in time after the magnet has been energized but before it has reached the sealed position is called zero time, then the value of each one of these boxes at zero time can be represented by a symbol W with the proper subscript. After a time interval, Δt , following zero time, all of these values must be changed by an amount representing the energy contribution taking place during the time interval Δt . This energy summation can be accomplished with the following expressions.

ELECTRIC ENERGY INPUT

The electric energy input to this system can be represented by equation 1.

$$\text{Electric energy input} = \int_0^t e i_c dt \quad (1)$$

It is possible to convert this integral equation into a difference expression by applying the trapezoid integration rule. Let the subscripts "0" and "t" on a quan-

tity represent the instantaneous value at zero time and after some time interval, Δt . If Δi_c represents the change in coil current during this interval, it is possible to write equation 2.

Electric energy input

$$= W_e + \frac{e_0 + e_t}{2} \left(i_{c0} + \frac{\Delta i_c}{2} \right) \Delta t \quad (2)$$

WORK DONE (ENERGY STORED IN SPRINGS)

Assume that the loading of this magnet or the force that opposes this magnet upon moving from open to closed position is shown by the solid line in Fig. 2. This curve represents the force versus displacement characteristics of a group of springs. In this case three springs are shown, but the shape of this curve is not important as long as it can be defined in a manner similar to that shown in Fig. 2. The area under this curve represents the energy stored in the spring system when the magnet is in the sealed position. This work can be expressed mathematically by the integral expression which is shown as equation 3:

$$\text{Work done (energy stored in springs)} = \int_0^x F_L dx \quad (3)$$

Let the additional subscripts "0" and "t" represent the value of F_L at the beginning and end of some interval of time. Then if the trapezoid integration rule is applied to this expression, the following difference expression can be stated:

$$\text{Work done (energy stored in springs)} = W_L + \left(\frac{F_{L0} + F_{LT}}{2} \right) \Delta X \quad (4)$$

where ΔX equals the distance the magnet moves during time, Δt .

ENERGY LOSS IN COIL

The energy loss in the coil is electrical energy which is converted to heat as the coil current flows through the coil resistance. The rate at which this heat is produced is, of course, the coil current squared times the resistance of the coil. Therefore, it is possible to write the following expression for the energy loss in the coil:

$$\text{Energy loss in coil} = \int_0^t i_c^2 R_c dt$$

In this case it is assumed that the coil resistance will remain constant, but, of course, the coil current will vary during some interval of time. Consider the value of this expression for some interval of time, Δt . If it is assumed that the coil current varies linearly during this time interval, it is possible to write the following expression for the energy loss in the coil:

$$\text{Energy loss in coil} = W_c + \int_0^{\Delta t} \left(i_{c0} + \frac{\Delta i_c}{\Delta t} t \right) R_c dt$$

If the indicated integration is performed, the following difference expression results:

$$\text{Energy loss in coil} = W_c + R_c \left(i_{c0}^2 + i_{c0} \Delta i_c + \frac{(\Delta i_c)^2}{3} \right) \Delta t \quad (7)$$

ENERGY LOSS IN MAGNETICALLY COUPLED CIRCUITS

In any electromagnet there are energy losses in circuits which are coupled to the coil circuit only through mutual inductance. In an a-c electromagnet these are losses such as the hysteresis and eddy current losses in the iron of the magnet and the energy loss due to current flowing in any secondary coil on the electromagnet such as a shading coil. Since these losses result in heating of the magnet and are primarily ohmic in nature, they can be represented by equivalent resistances in parallel with the coil circuit. In the case of a secondary coil, the equivalent resistance would be the turns ratio of the main coil turns divided by the secondary coil turns squared times the secondary resistance. In the case of eddy current and hysteresis losses, an equivalent resistance value can be derived from the core-loss data published by suppliers of electrical steel. These equivalent resistance values

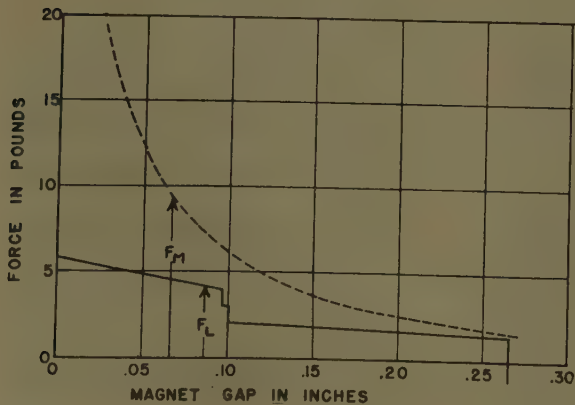


Fig. 2. Curve of spring loading on the magnet versus gap (solid) and curve of average force developed by the magnet versus gap if the magnet closes slowly (dashed)

be combined into one equivalent distance value which is defined as R_t . The only voltage appearing in the second circuit is that part of the applied voltage which is not dropped across the resistance. For the purposes of this paper, it will be assumed that all second circuits are coupled 100% with the primary coil. While this is not strictly true, in any other case it is possible to adjust the values of R_e and R_s so that this assumption can be made without serious error. It is now possible to set up an integral expression for the energy loss in magnetically coupled circuits as shown in equation 8.

Energy loss in magnetically coupled circuits

$$= \int_0^t \frac{1}{R_t} (e - i_c R_c)^2 dt \quad (8)$$

If the time interval Δt is assumed and the trapezoid rule for integration is used, the following difference expression results:

Energy loss in magnetically coupled circuits

$$= W_t + \frac{\Delta t}{R_t} \left[\left(\frac{e_0 + e_t}{2} \right)^2 - (e_0 + e_t) \left(i_{c0} + \frac{\Delta i_c}{2} \right) R_c + \left(i_{c0}^2 + i_{c0} \Delta i_c + \left(\frac{\Delta i_c}{2} \right)^2 \right) R_c^2 \right] \quad (9)$$

ENERGY LOSS DUE TO FRICTION

The total energy generated by friction can be expressed as the product of the friction force times the distance through which it is effective. After the incremental movement, ΔX , this quantity can be represented as shown in equation 10.

$$\text{Energy loss due to friction} = W_f + F_f |\Delta X| \quad (10)$$

ENERGY STORED IN MAGNETIC FIELD

The energy stored in a magnetic field can be expressed by the following integral equation:

Energy stored in magnetic field

$$= \int_0^{N\Phi} id(N\Phi) \quad (11)$$

Since most of the energy in an open a-c electromagnet is stored in the air gap, it is possible to assume a linear relation between flux and current. The total flux in any magnet at any time will be equal to the permeance of that magnet multiplied by the equivalent magnetizing ampere-turns. Now it is possible to rewrite this expression for the energy in the magnetic field as follows:

$$\text{Energy stored in magnetic field} = \frac{1}{2} (Ni)^2 \phi \quad (12)$$

Note that the current in this expression is not the coil current, but is the net instantaneous current producing the magnetic field. When the losses in magnetically coupled circuits were considered, it was implied that there were currents flowing in these circuits. These currents can be converted into equivalent coil currents and subtracted from the coil current to yield the net magnetizing current. The net magnetizing current thus obtained is used in this expression. The magnitude of these currents can be calculated by the expressions shown in equations 14 and 15.

$$i = i_c - i_e - i_s \quad (13)$$

$$i_e = \frac{e - i_c R_c}{R_e} \quad (14)$$

$$i_s = \frac{e - i_c R_c}{R_s} \quad (15)$$

ENERGY IN MOVING PARTS (KINETIC ENERGY)

The kinetic energy of the electromechanical system at any time can be represented by equation 16. If the motion of the device is along a straight line, this expression can be evaluated directly. If the motion of the electromagnet is along an arc of a circle, it is necessary to convert the moment of inertia of the device to equivalent mass and the angular velocity to an equivalent velocity before evaluating with this expression. For the purpose of this paper, it is enough to say that the kinetic energy can be expressed by an expression of the type shown in equation 16.

Energy stored in moving parts (kinetic

$$\text{energy}) = \frac{1}{2} mv^2 \quad (16)$$

One more expression is required before the expressions developed to this point can be used for the dynamic analysis of an a-c magnet. That expression is for the force developed by the magnet at any particular time. This force will be a function of the magnetic gap and the net magnetizing current flowing at the time being considered. The force developed by an electromagnet can be expressed as equation 17.

$$F_M = -\frac{1}{2} (Ni)^2 \frac{d\phi}{dG} \quad (17)$$

By proper analysis of the expressions given thus far, it should be possible to compute the dynamic operation of an

a-c-operated electromagnet. As these various expressions are examined, the task of computing the operation of the magnet appears to be quite ambitious, and indeed it would be were it not for the aid of digital computers in this type of computation. With the digital computer, it is only necessary to program the computation for one time interval, Δt , and repeat this computation again and again until the magnet has finally reached a sealed position.

If the energy stored in the magnetic field and the pull developed by the electromagnet are to be evaluated, it is necessary to derive an expression for the permeance of the electromagnet as a function of gap. A method of setting up this expression is shown in Appendix I. There are other ways to set up the expression for permeance versus gap such as field mapping or electrical measurements on actual sample magnets, but the primary purpose of this paper would not be served by going into such details.

Method of Solution

Assume that a sinusoidally varying voltage is applied to the coil so that $e = 1.414E \sin \omega t$. Assume that θ is the value of ωt at the instant the voltage is applied. Therefore, in equation 2 e_0 is established as $1.414E \sin \theta$ and e_t can be calculated knowing Δt . At the instant the circuit is closed, the net current i_0 is zero. Also assume that i_{c0} is zero. This is not strictly true but it leads to negligible error. Δi_c is not known. All the W terms are zero at this instant. Since the current is zero at the first instant, there will be no force developed by the magnet and it is assumed that the magnet will develop zero force during the entire first interval of time Δt . Since the magnet develops no force, there will be no work done during this interval. Upon examining equation 7, it can be seen that all quantities in this equation are known except Δi_c . Likewise, all quantities in equation 9 are known except for Δi_c . Since there is no magnetic force developed, there will be no motion. Thus the energy loss due to friction during this interval will be zero and the value of expression 10 is known. The kinetic energy of the moving parts will be zero after the time interval Δt because there is no motion. After the time interval, Δt , the energy stored in the magnetic field will be as shown in equation 12 except that i will be replaced by $i_0 + \Delta i_c$. (In order to simplify the calculation, the assumption has been made that $\Delta i = \Delta i_c$ for calculation of the stored magnetic energy only.)

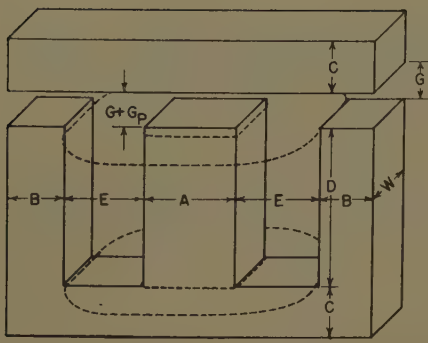


Fig. 3. Outline of magnet used for the example

Dashed line is coil outline
 G_p is gap at center leg when $G=0$

Thus, if the mathematical equation represented by Fig. 1 is written, the only unknown quantity will be Δi_c . This equation can be calculated for Δi_c . Knowing Δi_c , the energy contribution for this interval due to each one of these, expressions can be evaluated. Now the value of each expression shown in Fig. 1 is known after a time interval, Δt . The complete expression for the evaluation of Δi_c is given in Appendix II.

As the force developed by the magnet increases and exceeds the friction force, the magnet will start to move. The net force producing motion at any time is given by equation 18 or 19.

$$ma = F_M - F_L \pm F_f \quad \text{if } |F_M - F_L| > F_f \quad \text{and } v = 0 \quad (18)$$

$$ma = 0 \quad \text{if } |F_M - F_L| \leq F_f \quad \text{and } v = 0 \quad (19)$$

In this equation the friction force is plus or minus, depending upon the velocity at that particular time. The assumption is made that the acceleration remains constant for a time interval, Δt . Then the change in velocity during that time interval will be shown in equation 20.

$$\Delta V = a(\Delta t) \quad (20)$$

The displacement during that time interval will be shown in equation 21 or in 22.

$$\Delta X = \frac{1}{2} a(\Delta t)^2 + V_0(\Delta t) \quad (21)$$

$$\Delta X = \left(V_0 + \frac{\Delta V}{2} \right) (\Delta t) \quad (22)$$

Thus, after solving for Δi_c , all of the expressions in Fig. 1 can be evaluated at the end of any time interval, Δt . In the case of the kinetic energy and the energy of the magnetic field, the total energy after the time interval, Δt , can be calculated directly. For all other expressions, the energy contribution during the time interval, Δt , can be evaluated and added to the total energy represented by this term from initial energization until the time interval under consideration, W . This process is then repeated for as many Δt time intervals as desired.

The method of calculating permeance shown in Appendix I does not yield good results for magnetic gaps less than about 0.020 inch. Therefore this procedure is varied slightly at small gaps in the follow-

ing manner. When a gap becomes less than some predetermined limit, the assumption is made that the acceleration will remain constant at the least calculated value until the magnet is sealed. Therefore, if one knows the acceleration during this last interval and the velocity for the beginning of the interval, equation 21 can be used to calculate the final interval, Δt_f . This final Δt_f is added to the time previously accumulated to give the total closing time.

The details of how each expression is evaluated on a digital computer and the order in which they are calculated will not be discussed here, as these factors will vary with the type of computer used. This method of analysis has been used on a LGP-30 digital computer (Royal McBee Company) with success.

Discussion of Results

This method of computation of dynamic operating conditions of an a-c magnet such as shown in Fig. 3 has produced some very good results. Fig. 4 shows some calculated curves for the magnet discussed in Appendix II, together with some curves actually measured on the same magnet. The loading on this magnet was as shown in Fig. 2. The velocity of this magnet was measured by using a model 6V3 linear motion velocity transducer manufactured by Control Components Company, Brookline, Mass. This is essentially an air core transformer with a rod

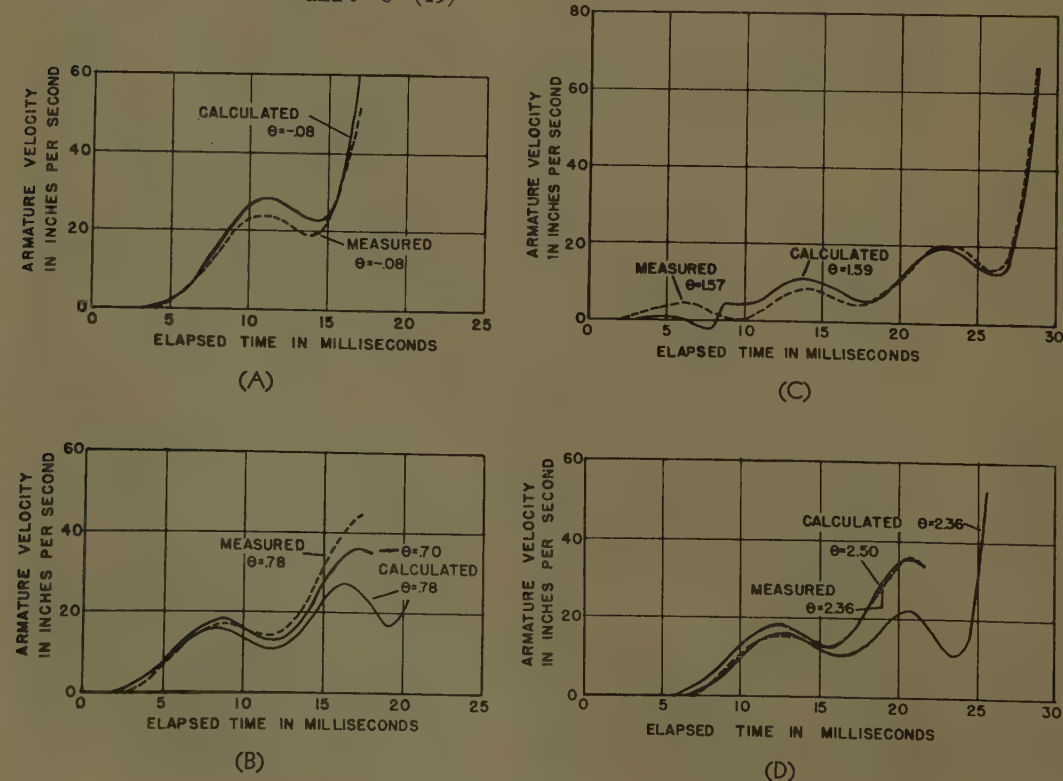


Fig. 4. Calculated and measured velocity versus time curves
 A— $\theta \approx 0$
 B— $\theta \approx \pi/4$
 C— $\theta \approx \pi/2$
 D— $\theta \approx 3\pi/4$

ped permanent magnet as a core. The e of the transducer was attached to the magnet armature. The transducer out- voltage, which is proportional to nature velocity, was displayed on an illoscope. At the same time, through e use of an electronic switch, the coil itage was also displayed on the oscillo- pe. The value of θ was varied by ergizing the magnet coil with a syn- rous switch. The value of θ for the r curves shown was established by amining the oscilloscope record of e applied voltage. An attempt was ade to establish θ at $0, \pi/4, \pi/2, 3\pi/4$.

The closing velocity curve of an a-c magnet can vary considerably depending the value of θ . Figs. 4(A) and 4(D) ch show two calculated curves for values θ differing by only small amounts. The curacy with which θ was determined r the measured curve was ± 0.1 radian t best. There was also some chattering bounce of the contacts energizing the il. This bounce is not considered in is analysis.

This analysis of an a-c magnet was ade with the assumption that the iron as infinite permeability. It can be own that this will lead to small errors if e flux density is less than 85,000 lines er square inch and if the total air-gap ength is more than 1% of the iron length. If this analysis is applied to a d-c electro- magnet, the flux versus ampere-turn characteristics of the iron must be in- cluded because generally the flux density n d-c magnets reaches higher levels than t does in a-c magnets.¹

Appendix I

The permeance of a magnetic field in air can be estimated by a method described in reference 2. For the example used in this paper, a magnet as shown in Fig. 3 is used. The letter symbols used for dimensions are indicated on Fig. 3 except for two dimensions, H and K . Let K represent the distance from the bottom of the coil slot to the top of the copper winding (neglecting the insulation on top of the coil). Let H represent the actual height of the copper winding measured in the same direction as dimension D . By applying the methods referred to previously, it is possible to write the following expressions:

$$\Phi_c = \mu \left[\frac{AW}{G+G_p} + 0.52A + 1.04W + 0.48 \times \left((G+G_p) + \frac{2A}{\pi} \ln \left(\frac{C+\frac{D}{2}}{G+G_p} + 1 \right) + \frac{C}{2} + \frac{D}{4} \right) \right] \quad (23)$$

$$\Phi_o = \mu \left[\frac{BW}{G} + 0.52B + 0.78W + 0.39G + \frac{0.64C(2E+A)}{C+D+G} + \frac{2B+W}{\pi} \times \ln \left(\frac{C+\frac{D}{2}}{G} + 1 \right) + \frac{C}{2} + \frac{D}{4} \right] \quad (24)$$

$$\Phi_L = \mu \left[\left(\frac{2W}{E} + 1.04 + \frac{4}{\pi} \ln \left(\frac{A}{E} + 1 \right) \right) \times \left(\frac{H}{3} + D - K \right) + 0.52W + 0.31E \right] \quad (25)$$

$$\Phi_T = \frac{2\Phi_o\Phi_c}{2\Phi_o + \Phi_c} + \Phi_L \quad (26)$$

where

Φ_c = permeance of air gap at center pole
 Φ_o = permeance of air gap at each outer pole
 Φ_L = leakage permeance
 Φ_T = total magnet permeance

It is now possible to calculate the average force developed by this magnet when the magnet is held at any particular fixed gap. Under this condition the current equals

$$I = \frac{E}{\sqrt{R_c^2 + \omega^2 N^4 \Phi_T^2}} \quad (27)$$

The average force can be calculated with equation obtained from reference 2.

$$F_M = 4.43(NI)^2 \frac{d\Phi_T}{dG} \text{ pounds} \quad (28)$$

For the example used in this paper, the following dimensional values are assumed:

$A = 0.672$ inch
 $B = 0.400$ inch
 $C = 0.375$ inch
 $D = 1.125$ inches
 $E = 0.577$ inch
 $H = 0.934$ inch
 $K = 1.014$ inches
 $W = 0.622$ inch
 $G_p = 0.008$ inch
 $N = 2,200$ turns
 $R_{coil} = 99$ ohms
 $\omega = 377$
 $E = 230$ volts rms
 $\mu = 3.19 \times 10^{-8}$ webers per ampere-turn-inch
 $m = 0.337 / (8.86 \times 386)$ joules per inch/
 inch per second²
 $\Delta t = 0.0002$ second

If the force developed at each gap is plotted against the gap, the curve shown by the broken line in Fig. 2 results.

Appendix II

In order to solve this problem it is necessary to write the proper equation which is expressed as a diagram in Fig. 1. Since the body of this paper describes the transition from an integral expression to a finite difference expression for each term, this equation is expressed below in finite difference form:

$$W_e + \frac{e_0 + e_t}{2} \left(i_{c0} + \frac{\Delta i_c}{2} \right) \Delta t \\ = W_L + \frac{F_{L0} + F_{LT}}{2} \Delta X + W_c + \\ R_c \left(i_{c0}^2 + i_{c0} \Delta i_c + \frac{\Delta i_c^2}{3} \right) \Delta t + \\ W_t + \frac{\Delta t}{R_t} \left[\left(\frac{e_0 + e_t}{2} \right)^2 - (e_0 + e_t) \times \right. \\ \left. \left(i_{c0} + \frac{\Delta i_c}{2} \right) R_c + \left(i_{c0}^2 + i_{c0} \Delta i_c + \right. \right. \\ \left. \left. \left(\frac{\Delta i_c}{2} \right)^2 \right) R_c \right] + W_f + F_f |\Delta X| + \\ \frac{1}{2} N^2 (i_0^2 + 2i_0 \Delta i_c + \Delta i_c^2) \Phi_{Te} + \frac{1}{2} m V_t^2 \quad (29)$$

where

$$i_0 = i_{c0} - i_{e0} - i_{s0}$$

After ΔX has been found by the use of equations 18-21, this equation can be solved for Δi_c .

$$(\Delta i_c)^2 \left[R_c \frac{\Delta t}{3} + \frac{R_c^2 \Delta t}{R_t} + \frac{N^2}{2} \Phi_{Te} \right] + \\ (\Delta i_c) \left[- \left(\frac{e_0 + e_t}{2} \right) \left(\frac{\Delta t}{2} \right) + R_c i_{c0} \Delta t - \right. \\ \left. (e_0 + e_t) \frac{R_c}{R_t} \left(\frac{\Delta t}{2} \right) + \frac{R_c^2}{R_t} i_{c0} \Delta t + \right. \\ \left. N^2 i_0 \Phi_{Te} \right] + \left[-W_e - \frac{e_0 + e_t}{2} i_{c0} \Delta t + \right. \\ \left. W_L + \frac{F_{L0} + F_{LT}}{2} \Delta X + W_c + R_c i_{c0}^2 \Delta t + \right. \\ \left. W_t + \left(\frac{e_0 + e_t}{2} \right)^2 \frac{\Delta t}{R_t} - (e_0 + e_t) \frac{R_c}{R_t} i_{c0} \Delta t + \right. \\ \left. \frac{R_c^2}{R_t} i_{c0}^2 \Delta t + W_f + F_f |\Delta X| + \right. \\ \left. \frac{N^2}{2} i_0^2 \Phi_{Te} + \frac{1}{2} m V_t^2 \right] = 0 \quad (30)$$

This is a quadratic equation in Δi_c which can be solved with the quadratic formula. There is a problem as to which sign to use for the radical in the quadratic formula. The following criterion was established because it works well in the actual problem:

If $i_{c0} \geq 0$

$$\Delta i_c = \frac{-b + \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$$

If $i_{c0} < 0$

$$\Delta i_c = \frac{-b - \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$$

References

1. THE ANALYTICAL DESIGN AND EVALUATION OF ELECTROMAGNETS, J. Kelly, J. E. Wallace. AIEE Transactions, pt. I (Communication and Electronics), vol. 75, 1956 (Jan. 1957 section), pp. 675-80.
2. ELECTRO-MAGNETIC DEVICES (book), Herbert C. Roters. John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York, N. Y., 1941, chap. V, pp. 196-200, 423.

Design of Servo Compensation Based on the Root Locus Approach

E. R. ROSS
STUDENT MEMBER AIEE

T. C. WARREN
STUDENT MEMBER AIEE

G. J. THALER
MEMBER AIEE

IN GENERAL, the system function of a linear feedback control system may be symbolized by

$$\frac{\theta_C(s)}{\theta_R(s)} = \frac{G(s)}{1+GH(s)} \quad (1)$$

where

$\theta_C(s)$ = the Laplace transform of the output
 $\theta_R(s)$ = the Laplace transform of the input
 $G(s)$ = the forward transfer function
 $GH(s)$ = the loop transfer function

Furthermore the characteristic equation of the closed-loop system may be defined by

$$1+GH(s)=0 \quad (2)$$

and the roots of the characteristic equation may be evaluated by the usual root locus plot of the loop transfer function.

In the usual design, the steady-state error is limited by specifying a minimum gain, which is usually designed as K_p , K_v , K_a , etc., depending upon the number of integrations in the loop transfer function. With such a gain specification, the locations of the roots of the uncompensated system are usually not satisfactory, and compensation must be used. The designer can usually interpret his specifications in terms of a desired location for a pair of complex conjugate roots which should dominate the system response characteristics. This paper presents a method for computing the poles and zeros of a compensator which will force roots to exist at the designated locations with the specified open-loop gain. The method is exact, it may be applied for either a cascaded compensator or a compensator in a feedback loop, and it yields numerical answers for the pole and zero locations in a few minutes.

Paper 60-779, recommended by the AIEE Feedback Control Systems Committee and approved by the AIEE Technical Operations Department for presentation at the AIEE Summer General Meeting, Atlantic City, N. J., June 19-24, 1960. Manuscript submitted November 2, 1959; made available for printing March 28, 1960.

E. R. ROSS, Lt., Royal Canadian Navy, is with the Department of National Defense (Navy), Ottawa, Ont., Canada. T. C. WARREN, Lt., United States Navy, is stationed on the USS Helena. G. J. THALER is with the United States Naval Postgraduate School, Monterey, Calif.

Basic Theory

Assume that a designer is given a feedback control system with loop transfer function $GH(s)$, such that the poles and zeros of $GH(s)$ are known and the gain constant has been adjusted to satisfy minimum gain requirements, and given also the s -plane co-ordinates for a desired pair of complex roots which are to be realized by compensation without altering steady-state accuracy. The solution to this problem may be considered in two parts, first, the root locus must be altered so that some segment of the root locus passes through the designated root points, and second, the design must force the roots to lie at the selected points. In general, the first of these requirements may be satisfied by a multiplicity of compensators; an infinite number of pole-zero combinations can force the root locus to pass through the designated root point. When the gain requirement is added, however, the number of possible solutions is restricted. If it is possible to make the root locus pass through the selected point with a single-pole single-zero compensator, then only one such compensator can be found which also satisfies the gain requirement. If several sections are to be used the solution is not unique, but for identical cascaded sections certain restrictions may be determined as will be shown.

Derivation of the equations for the compensator design is readily accomplished, as may be explained with the aid of Fig. 1. The root location, r , is specified as are the poles and zeros of $GH(s)$, which are not shown in Fig. 1, and the gain (K_p , K_v , K_a) is also known. The point r is not on the root locus of the uncompensated system, therefore the phase at this point is not 180° degrees, but some other angle which may be computed by substituting the s co-ordinates of the root point into $GH(s)$, or by use of the spirule. The angle which a compensator must provide to make r lie on the root locus is readily determined by subtraction, and is designated in Fig. 1 as the angle ϕ . In like manner the root locus gain at $s=r$ may be evaluated from $GH(s)$

$$G \Delta = \left| \frac{r^n(r+P_1)(r+P_2)\dots}{(r+z_1)(r+z_2)\dots} \right|$$

This gain value, G , may also be evaluated analytically or by using a spirule. The vector ratio contributed by the compensator is

$$g = \left| \frac{a}{b} \right|$$

when the compensator is a single-zero single-pole filter, and a and b are the distances from the zero and pole to r , defined by Fig. 1. The root locus gain of the compensated system at point r is G/g .

To satisfy steady-state requirements it is necessary that

$$K = \frac{G\alpha}{g}$$

where

K = gain constant of the uncompensated system
 $\alpha = z/p$ for the compensator (see Fig. 1)

From these relationships, and Fig. 1,

$$\alpha = \frac{z}{p} = \frac{z}{z+c} = \frac{gK}{G} = \frac{aK}{bG}$$

$$\frac{z}{a} = \frac{K(z+c)}{bG} = \frac{\sin(\lambda-\phi)}{\sin\delta}$$

$$\frac{z+c}{b} = \frac{\sin\lambda}{\sin\delta}$$

and by manipulation

$$z = \frac{hK}{G} \frac{\sin\lambda}{\sin\theta}$$

$$z+c = P = \frac{h \sin\lambda}{\sin(\theta-\phi)} \quad (10)$$

where

$$\lambda = \cot^{-1} \left(\cot\phi - \frac{K}{G} \csc\phi \right)$$

$$\theta = \pi + \phi - \delta - \lambda$$

Equations 9 and 10 give the locations of the required zero and pole. Note that h , K , G , ϕ , and δ are effectively given by

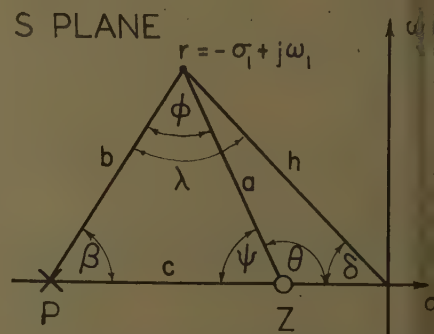


Fig. 1. s -plane diagram for the derivation of equations

specifications, and λ and θ are readily computed.

For a double-section lead compensator, the same approach may be used to derive the equations and the result

$$\sqrt{\frac{K}{G} \frac{\sin \lambda_2}{\sin \theta_2}} \quad (11)$$

$$= P = \frac{h \sin \lambda_2}{\sin (\theta_2 - \phi_2)} \quad (12)$$

re

$$\cot^{-1} \left(\cot \phi_2 - \sqrt{\frac{K}{G} \csc \phi_2} \right)$$

$$\pi + \phi_2 - \delta - \lambda_2$$

$$\phi/2$$

the subscript 2 is used to designate the zero and pole are repeated.

For a larger number of identical sections the equations are

$$\sqrt[n]{\frac{K}{G} \frac{\sin \lambda_n}{\sin \theta_n}} \quad (13)$$

$$\frac{h \sin \lambda_n}{\sin (\theta_n - \phi_n)} \quad (14)$$

ere

$$= \cot^{-1} \left(\cot \phi_n - \sqrt[n]{\frac{K}{G} \csc \phi_n} \right)$$

$$= 180^\circ + \phi_n - \delta - \lambda_n$$

$$= \phi/n$$

For a phase-lag compensator the pole is closer to the origin than the zero, and the angle ϕ becomes negative. The equations for this case are the same as for the case of phase lead, it is only necessary to use the proper sign with ϕ .

When the gain is not restricted the compensator pole and zero may be placed at any locations which satisfy the requirement for the angle ϕ . The simplest approach in this case is to select one of the points (perhaps the zero) arbitrarily, then lay off the angle ϕ with a protractor to locate the other point (pole).

Root Relocation Zones

When there are no restrictions on the locations of the compensator pole and zero, and no gain restriction, a root may be located at any point in the s -plane by use of a single-pole single-zero compensator, see Appendix I. The addition of restrictions on gain, and on the location of compensator poles and zeros places limitations on the regions in the s -plane where roots can be located with a single-pole single-zero compensator. For any given system it is easy to subdivide the s -plane

into root relocation zones. One set of dividing lines are the root loci themselves, which are loci of $180N$ degrees ($N = -1, -3, -5 \dots$). A second set of dividing lines are the phase angle loci for $2n\pi$ ($n = 0, 1, 2, 3 \dots$). The areas bounded by these lines may be labeled lag areas and lead areas. Lag areas are 0 to 180 degrees; 360 to 540 degrees; 720 to 900 degrees; etc. Lead areas are 180 to 360 degrees; 540 to 720 degrees; 900 to 1,080 degrees, etc. The type of compensation required to reshape a root locus through a selected point is normally designated by the type area in which the selected point lies. This is true whether there are restrictions on gain, etc., or not. If there is no restriction on gain or on pole-zero location, then a root may be relocated at any point in the designated zone with a single-pole single-zero compensator. When the gain restriction is added, and the compensator pole and zero are restricted to the negative real axis, then a single-pole single-zero compensator can relocate a root only in a limited subarea of each relocation zone. The dividing lines on the s -plane which define the limits for single-section compensators may be determined very simply by drawing pseudo-root loci according to the following rules:

To find the dividing line for a single-section lead compensator draw the root loci for a pole-zero configuration which consists of all of the zeros of the original open-loop function (but none of the poles) plus an additional zero at the origin, plus a pole located at each root of the uncompensated system. The pseudo-root loci obtained from this pole-zero configuration subdivide the original lead areas into an area for single lead section compensation and an area for multiple lead section compensation.

To find the dividing line for a single-section lag compensator draw the root loci for a pole-zero configuration, which consists of all of the poles (but none of the zeros) of the original open-loop function plus an additional pole at the origin plus a zero located at each root of the uncompensated system. The pseudo-root loci obtained in this fashion subdivide the original lag areas into a single lag section area and a multiple lag section area. Proof that these rules are valid is given in Appendix II.

The root relocation zones defined in this fashion permit the designer to select the desired root location, determine the type of compensation required, and determine whether one or more sections of compensator are required. (The pseudo-root loci define an absolute limit on single-section

compensation. If a root relocation point is selected too near this line in the single-section zone, the resulting pole-zero ratio may not be practical.) If the selected root relocation point is in a multiple section zone, the designer may decide to use several identical sections, or may obtain several nonidentical section by repeated application of single-section design.

The Design Procedure

1. Draw the root locus of the uncompensated system, and locate the roots using the specified K .
2. Construct the root relocation zones.
3. Select the point at which a root is to be relocated.
4. Determine ϕ and G at the selected point.
5. Apply equations 9 and 10 if a single-section compensator is needed, or equations 11 and 12 for two identical sections, or equations 13 and 14 for n number of sections.

If several nonidentical sections are desired, step 5 is altered as is shown later.

Applications of the Design Procedure

SINGLE LEAD SECTION COMPENSATION

Consider the second-order type 2 system defined by

$$G(s) = \frac{400}{s^2} \quad (15)$$

The original root locus is shown in Fig. 2, with roots at $\mp j 20$. The entire left-half plane is the lead area, the right-half plane is the lag area. Addition of the pseudo-root loci subdivides these areas into single lead, single lag, multiple lead, and multiple lag zones. It is desired to relocate the roots at $-15 \mp j 22.5$, and by inspection this can be done with a single lead section. The computations are as follows:

The root locus phase at the point is $\phi_1 = 248^\circ$ from which $\phi = 68^\circ$.

$$\delta = 56^\circ$$

$$G = (27)(27)$$

$$h = 27$$

$$\frac{K}{G} = \frac{400}{729} = 0.548$$

$$\lambda = \cot^{-1} (\cot 68^\circ - 0.548 \csc 68^\circ) = 100.7^\circ$$

$$\theta = 180 + 68 - 56 - 100.7 = 91.3^\circ$$

Note that $\theta > \phi$ which checks the requirement for a single lead section. Using equations 9 and 10

$$z = \frac{hK \sin \lambda}{G \sin \theta} = 14.5$$

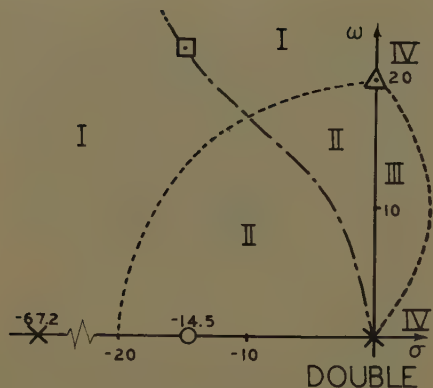


Fig. 2. $KG(s) = \frac{400}{s^2}$, compensated to give

$$KG(s) = \frac{1830(s+14.5)}{s^2(s+67.2)}, \text{ with constant } K_a$$

Δ = Original root, \square = Final root, — Original root locus, ——— Final root locus, Limit lines. I. Single-section lead area. II. Multiple-section lead area. III. Single-section lag area. IV. Multiple-section lag area. These symbols are used in all remaining figures

$$P = \frac{h \sin \lambda}{\sin (\theta - \phi)} = 67.2$$

Therefore, the compensated system transfer function is

$$KG(s) = \frac{1830(s+14.5)}{s^2(s+67.2)} \quad (16)$$

The root loci for the compensated system are also shown in Fig. 2.

Consider the second-order type 1 transfer function

$$G(s) = \frac{100}{s(s+5)} \quad (17)$$

The roots of the closed-loop system are at

$-2.5 \pm j 9.2$, and it is desired to relocate the roots at $-14.14 \pm j 14.14$. The root relocation zones are sketched as shown in Fig. 3, and it is seen that the desired root location is in a single lead section zone. The following values are readily computed.

$$\begin{aligned} \phi &= 78^\circ & h &= 20 \\ \delta &= 45^\circ & \lambda &= 94.9 \\ G &= 340 & \theta &= 118.1 \\ K/G &= 0.295 \end{aligned}$$

Applying equations 9 and 10

$$z = -6.67 \quad P = 31.0$$

The compensated transfer function is

$$G(s) = \frac{454(s+6.67)}{s(s+5)(s+31.0)} \quad (18)$$

and the compensated root locus is shown in Fig. 3.

COMPENSATION WITH TWO LEAD SECTIONS

Consider the third-order type 1 system defined by

$$G(s) = \frac{420}{s(s+1)(s+15)} \quad (19)$$

The original root locus is shown in Fig. 4 and the system is unstable. It is desired to relocate the roots at point B, and construction of the root relocation zones shows that multiple lead sections are required. Computing values at point B,

$$\begin{aligned} \phi &= 117^\circ & K/G &= 0.1375 \\ \delta &= 59\frac{1}{2}^\circ & h &= 14.62 \end{aligned}$$

Assuming two lead sections,

$$\begin{aligned} \phi_2 &= 58\frac{1}{2}^\circ \\ \lambda_2 &= 79.9 \\ \theta_2 &= 99.1^\circ \end{aligned}$$

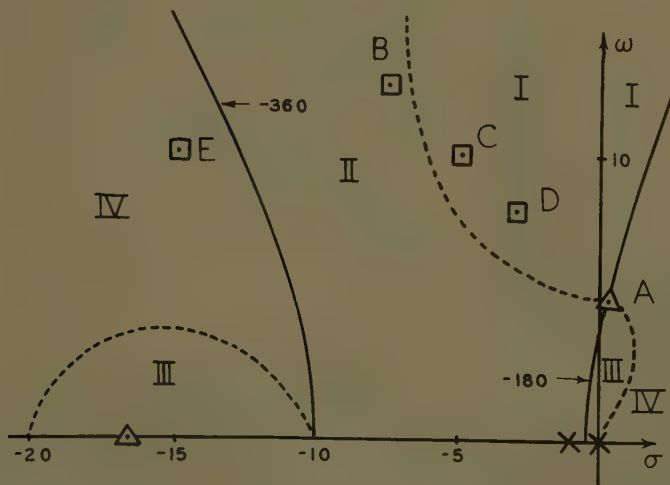


Fig. 4. Root locus and limit lines for the system $KG(s) = \frac{420}{s(s+1)(s+15)}$

B, C, D, E—Root locations referred to in text

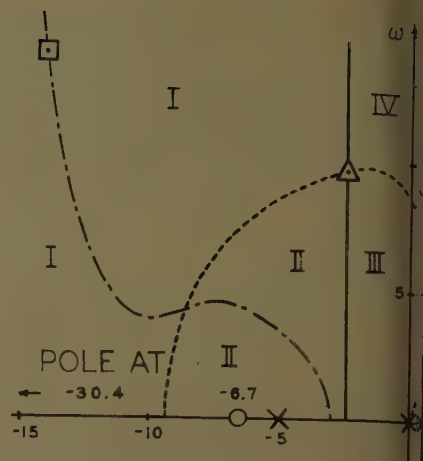


Fig. 3. $KG(s) = \frac{100}{s(s+5)}$ compensated constant K_v to give $KG(s) = \frac{454(s+6.67)}{s(s+5)(s+31.0)}$

Since $\theta_2 > \phi_2$ two sections are enough. Then $\sqrt{K/G} = 0.371$ and using equations 11 and 12

$$z = \frac{h \sqrt{K/G} \sin \lambda_2}{\sin \theta_2} = 5.4$$

$$P = \frac{h \sin \lambda_2}{\sin (\theta_2 - \phi_2)} = 22.1$$

From which the compensated transfer function is

$$G(s) = \frac{6950(s+5.4)^2}{s(s+1)(s+15)(s+22.1)^2}$$

The compensated root locus is shown in Fig. 5. Insertion of the two identical sections introduces a pair of complex conjugate roots as shown.

A root may be located at point B in Fig. 4 using two nonidentical lead sections.

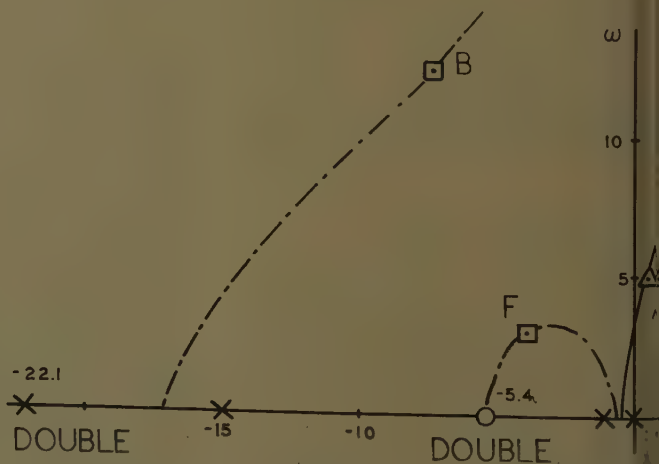
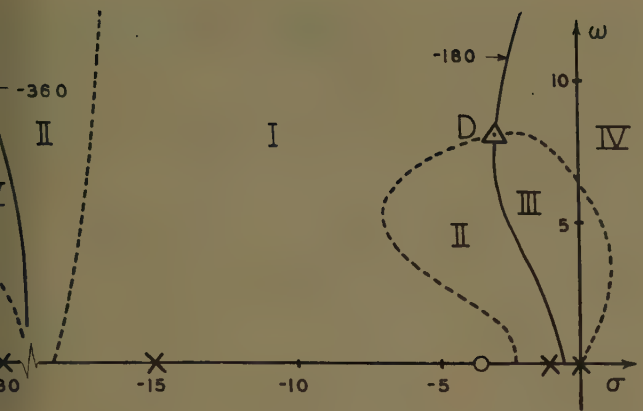


Fig. 5. $KG(s) = \frac{420}{s(s+1)(s+15)}$ compensated with a double section lead compensator for constant K_v to give $KG(s) = \frac{6950(s+5.4)^2}{s(s+1)(s+15)(s+22.1)^2}$
F = introduced root



6. Root locus and root relocation zones for first step of successive single-section lead compensators $KG(s) = \frac{3570(s+3.54)}{s(s+1)(s+15)(s+30.1)}$

as by simply repeating the single-section design procedure with judicious choice of an intermediate root location, point D in the single-lead section zone chosen as the point at which the root is to be located in the first step, then at point D

$$\begin{aligned} \phi &= 70^\circ & K/G &= 0.417 \\ \lambda &= 69^\circ & \lambda &= 94.5^\circ \\ \delta &= 8.55 & \theta &= 86.48^\circ \end{aligned}$$

then using equations 9 and 10, $z = 3.54$ and $p = 30.1$.

The transfer function for the partially compensated system is

$$G(s) = \frac{3570(s+3.54)}{s(s+1)(s+15)(s+30.1)} \quad (21)$$

The root loci are shown in Fig. 6 with root location zones added to show that point D now lies in a single lead zone. At point B , using equation 21

$$\begin{aligned} \phi &= 40^\circ & \lambda &= 76.8^\circ \\ \delta &= 59^\circ & \theta &= 84^\circ \\ K/G &= 0.615 & h &= 14.6 \end{aligned}$$

gain using equations 9 and 10, $z = 8.8$ and $p = 20.5$.

The compensated root loci are shown in Fig. 7. Note that there is little difference between the introduced roots in Fig. 7 and those in Fig. 5.

SINGLE LAG SECTION COMPENSATION

Consider the high-gain-type zero transfer function

$$G(s) = \frac{3.72 \times 10^6}{(s+5)(s+15)(s+25)(s+35)} \quad (22)$$

The root loci for the system are shown in Fig. 8. The high gain places complex roots in the right-half plane, and construction of the root relocation zones indicates that compensation without reducing K_p requires multiple lead sections, or a single lag section. It is decided to use the single

lag section relocating the roots at $-5 \pm j7$.

$$\begin{aligned} \phi &= -21.7^\circ \\ h &= 8.7 \\ K/G &= 69.0 \\ \delta &= 54.7^\circ \\ G &= 5.40 \times 10^4 \\ \theta &= 103.7^\circ \\ \lambda &= \cot^{-1} [\cot(-21.3^\circ) - 69.0 \csc(-21.3^\circ)] \\ &= \cot^{-1} \left[(-2.54) - (69.0) \left(-\frac{1}{0.3665} \right) \right] \\ &= \cot^{-1} [-2.54 + 188] = \cot^{-1} 185.46 \\ &= 0.31^\circ \end{aligned}$$

From which $z = 3.28$, $p = 0.0492$.

The compensated transfer function becomes

$$G(s) = \frac{6.45 \times 10^4 (s+3.28)}{(s+0.0492)(s+5)(s+15)(s+25)(s+35)} \quad (23)$$

USE OF TWO LEAD SECTIONS INSTEAD OF FOUR LAG SECTIONS

Consider the transfer function of equation 19, and the root location zones of Fig. 4. It is desired to place complex roots at point E , ($s = -15 \pm j10$). This point lies in a multiple lag zone, and upon checking it is found that four identical lag sections are required if lag compensation is used. On the other hand, if a lead compensator is desired to place a root at C ($s = -5 \pm j10$) and root relocation zones are drawn as in Fig. 9, it is seen that point E now falls within a single lead zone.

The compensator required to place the root at C is

$$G_c(s) = \frac{s+2.71}{s+73}$$

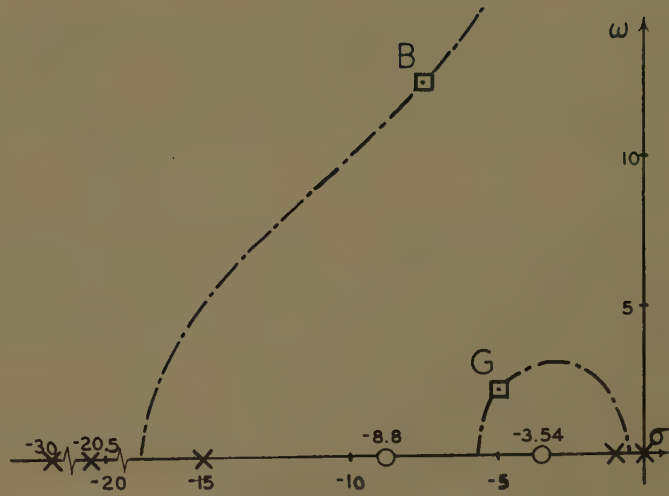


Fig. 7. Final root locus of $KG(s) = \frac{8300(s+3.54)(s+8.8)}{s(s+1)(s+15)(s+20.5)(s+30.1)}$
G = introduced root

which is not a desirable attenuation ratio, but the compensator required to make the final relocation at E is

$$G_c = \frac{s+14.8}{s+40.3}$$

so the compensated transfer function is

$$G(s) = \frac{31,800(s+2.71)(s+14.8)}{s(s+1)(s+15)(s+40.3)(s+73)} \quad (24)$$

and the composite compensator is satisfactory. The final root locus is shown in Fig. 9.

Conclusions

An analytic method has been developed for obtaining the required compensator parameters to permit arbitrary location of the closed-loop roots for feedback control systems for arbitrarily designated gain. The method is aided by the definition of root relocation zones which provide a visual guide in the application of the

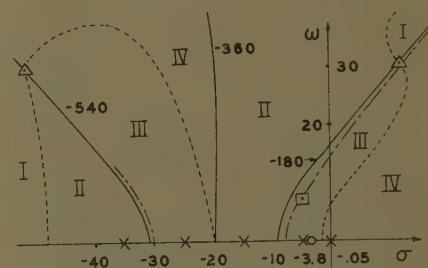


Fig. 8. Lag compensation of $KG(s) = \frac{3.72 \times 10^6}{(s+5)(s+15)(s+25)(s+35)}$
with constant K_p to give
 $KG(s) = \frac{6 \times 10^4 (s+3.8)}{(s+5)(s+15)(s+25)(s+35)(s+0.05)}$

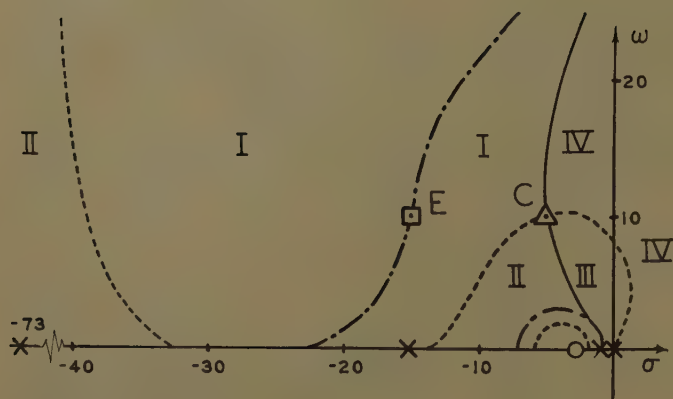


Fig. 9. First-step compensation and final root locus for relocation to point E, original system

$$KG(s) = \frac{420}{s(s+1)(s+15)}$$

$$\text{First step compensated system: } KG(s) = \frac{11700(s+2.71)}{s(s+1)(s+15)(s+73)}$$

$$\text{Final system: } KG(s) = \frac{31800(s+2.71)(s+14.8)}{s(s+1)(s+15)(s+40.3)(s+73)}$$

method. The method is flexible, fast, and accurate.

Appendix I

When there are no restrictions on gain, or on pole and zero locations, a single-pole single-zero compensator can normally reshape the root locus to pass through any selected point on the s -plane. This can be illustrated with a simple two-pole root locus as shown in Fig. 10(A). Using a single lead section the root locus may be made to pass through any selected point to the left of the uncompensated root locus as may be seen from Fig. 10(B), in which the pole of the lead section is assumed to be far out on the negative real axis. In this case the original root locus is bent into a closed curve, and if the location of the zero is shifted on the real axis, then the radius of the root-locus curve changes, and the locus may be passed through any selected point. If the zero is moved to the right of P_1 a real root is introduced near the origin, but the complex roots remain to the left of the original root locus as shown by Fig. 10(C). Moving the pole of the compensator merely provides a multiplicity of loci through any selected point, but these loci are still restricted to the designated area. In like manner when a single-section lag compensator is used, the complex roots are restricted to the right of the original root locus, and it is possible that the equations may specify a pole in the right-half plane. Thus, for a simple two-pole system, the complex roots can be relocated at any point on the

s -plane by a single-section compensator providing there are no restrictions on the gain or the real axis locations of the compensator pole and zero.

When additional restrictions are considered, multiple-section compensators may be required. At least two additional roots are introduced by such compensators. Fig. 10(D) illustrates the case of a double lead section used with the two-pole system. From Fig. 10(D) it is seen that the introduced roots may be complex, and it is not immediately obvious which of the two segments of root locus will pass through an arbitrarily specified point.

Appendix II

Introducing the restriction that the compensation must locate a root at the designated point with a specified value of gain (K_p , K_v , K_a) so as to limit the error, it is immediately apparent that the root relocation zones require more detailed definition. The basic lead and lag areas are not changed, but the simultaneous restrictions of a single-section compensator and a specified gain can be satisfied only in a subsection of the designated area. From Fig. 1 it can be seen that for a phase lead compensator, as ϕ increases the compensator pole moves out on the negative real axis, approaching infinity. In the limit, $\phi = \theta$ for the pole located at infinity. Thus, when using a single-section phase lead compensator the phase angle requirement is

$$0 < \phi < \theta$$

(25)

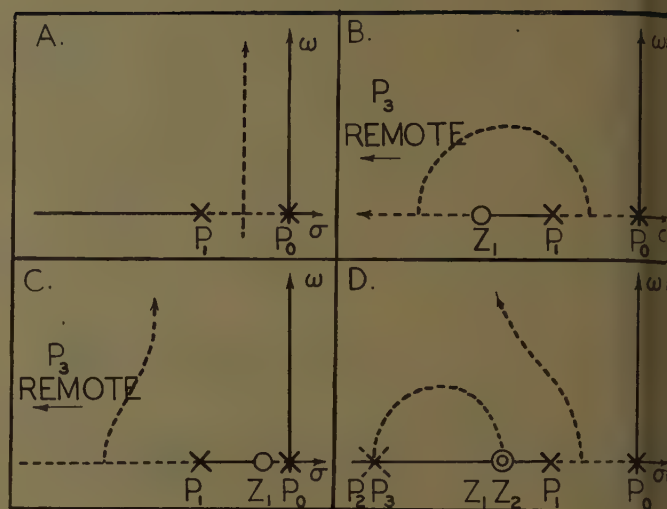


Fig. 10. Effect of compensators on root loci on the s -plane

A—Two-pole root locus

B—Locus with lead compensator with remote pole

C—Effect of moving zero inside P_1

D—Effect of double-section phase lead compensator

which may also be seen from equation 1. The maximum displacement of the root from its uncompensated location, for a specified gain and using a single lead section, is a locus of points defined for the compensator pole at infinity and the zero swept along the negative real axis. The equations which must be satisfied are

$$\cot \lambda = \cot \phi - \frac{K}{G} \csc \phi \quad (26)$$

$$\theta = 180^\circ - \delta - \lambda + \phi \quad (27)$$

$$\theta = \phi \quad (28)$$

In like manner, a limit line is defined for a single-section phase lag compensator except that the limit is defined for the zero at infinity and the pole swept along the negative real axis. Equations 26 and 27 apply, but the restriction on θ is

$$\theta \geq 0 \quad (29)$$

These limit lines may be computed point by point using the equations but it is more convenient to introduce a fictitious pole-zero configuration and plot pseudo-root loci which are identically the desired limit lines for root location by a single-section compensator.

To show that the pseudo-root locus does coincide with the single-section limit lines, consider the general open-loop transfer function

$$KG(s) = \frac{KY_1(s)}{Y_2(s)} \quad (30)$$

The characteristic equation of the corresponding closed loop is

$$1 + KG(s) = 0 \text{ or } Y_2(s) + KY_1(s) = 0 \quad (31)$$

Let the system be compensated by

se lead compensator such that the compensator pole is allowed to approach infinity. This is equivalent to the introduction of a zero. The limiting open-loop transfer function for the compensated system is

$$G_1(s) = \frac{K_1(s+z_1)Y_1(s)}{Y_2(s)} \quad (32)$$

where the value of K_1 is not specified. The characteristic equation of the corresponding closed loop is

$$-K_1G_1(s)=0 \text{ or } Y_2(s)+K_1(s+z_1)Y_1(s)=0 \quad (33)$$

z_1 is swept along the negative real axis with K_1 continuously adjusted to keep the

gain (K_p, K_v, K_a) constant, the roots of the characteristic equation are swept along a locus which is a limit line for a single-section lead compensator.

There exists on open-loop transfer function for which the root loci (here called pseudo-root loci) are identically the limit lines for the compensated system. This open-loop transfer function is

$$K_2G_2(s) = \frac{K_2sY_1(s)}{Y_2(s)+K_2Y_1(s)} \quad (34)$$

where the value of K_2 is not specified. That this is the correct transfer function may be seen from the characteristic equation

Setting this function equal to -1 , clearing the denominator, and regrouping gives

$$[K_1Y_1(s)+Y_2(s)][1+T_2s]+(T_1-T_2)sKY_1(s)=0 \quad (37)$$

For $T_1-T_2=0$, the roots must be $-1/T_2$ and the zeros of the uncompensated function given in equation 31. For T_1-T_2 infinite, the roots must be the origin and the zeros of $Y_1(s)$.

Denoting the uncompensated roots as r_1, r_2 etc., equation 2 can be rewritten as

$$\frac{(T_1-T_2)sKY_1(s)}{[K'(1-s/r_1)(1-s/r_2)\dots][1+T_2s]} = -1 \quad (38)$$

The root locus of equation 38 with (T_1-T_2) is the limit of the single lead network, for T_2 constant. Making T_2 zero rather than small can be shown to eliminate a phase lag at a typical root r_1 so that the

$$Y_2(s)+KY_1(s)+K_2sY_1(s)=0 \quad (35)$$

since equations 33 and 35 are identical if we define $K_2=K_1$ and $K=K_1z$. By a similar manipulation the proof may be extended to the phase lag case.

References

1. CONTROL-SYSTEM DYNAMICS (book), Walter R. Evans. McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc., New York, N. Y., 1954.
2. SYNTHESIS OF FEEDBACK CONTROL SYSTEM BY PHASE-ANGLE LOCI, Yaohan Chu. *AIEE Transactions*, pt. II (*Applications and Industry*), vol. 71, Nov. 1952, pp. 330-39.
3. SERVOMECHANISM ANALYSIS (book), George J. Thaler, Robert G. Brown. McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc., first edition, 1953.

locus has maximum change in direction from its original path.

E. R. Ross, T. C. Warren, and G. J. Thaler: We wish to thank Mr. Evans for his interest, and for the clarification of some important points. It should also be noted that the techniques developed in this paper can be extended and amplified. Some extensions¹ have already been investigated. It is possible to construct limit lines for two identical sections. It is also possible to construct loci of constant $x=z/p$ within the single-section zone. The additional labor involved is not excessive, but the advantage gained is not enough to make these techniques attractive.

REFERENCE

1. COMPENSATION OF SERVOMECHANISMS USING ROOT RELOCATION ZONE CONCEPTS, Oscar E. Sanden, Jr. *Master's Thesis*, U. S. Naval Postgraduate School, Monterey, Calif., 1960.

Aircraft Storage Batteries

WALTER J. HAMER
MEMBER AIEE

LEAD-ACID, nickel-cadmium, and silver-zinc storage batteries have been used, or have been proposed for use, on commercial and military aircraft. Each one of these electrochemical systems has characteristics that recommend it for service in aircraft. Lead-acid batteries, dating from the double-chamber Mark 1-7 series, have been used for a long time in such service and are well adapted to the conventional electric circuits used in airplanes. Nickel-cadmium batteries may be "hermetically" sealed, and exhibit good outputs over a wide range of discharge rates. Silver-zinc batteries give high electrical output per unit weight and

volume, a most desirable characteristic for aircraft where weight and volume are at a premium. Recently, a fourth system, the silver-cadmium battery, has been proposed but insufficient data are presently available to predict its over-all performance.

In present-day aircraft where nominal 24-volt d-c electric systems are the most common, 24-volt batteries are used. This necessitates the use of 12 cells in lead-acid, 19-20 cells in nickel-cadmium, and 14 cells in silver-zinc batteries. The individual cells are insulated from each other by glass, plastic, rubber linings; or other insulating material, and the cell terminals are connected by high-current-carry-

ing intercell connectors. Lead is used for the intercell connectors for lead-acid batteries and nickel-plated copper is invariably used for the alkaline nickel-cadmium and silver-zinc batteries. A quick-disconnect receptacle is mounted on the side near the top of the battery and is used with a high-current-carrying lead to the bus bar of the aircraft electric circuit.

Individual lead-acid cells are housed in molded composition cases enclosed in aluminum containers covered with an acid-resistant plastic or bituminous material. The intercell connectors for lead-acid batteries are covered with a rubberized sealing compound. The vents of

Paper 60-849, recommended by the AIEE Chemical Industry Committee and approved by the AIEE Technical Operations Department for presentation at the AIEE Summer General Meeting, Atlantic City, N. J., June 19-24, 1960. Manuscript submitted March 22, 1960; made available for printing June 3, 1960.

WALTER J. HAMER is with the National Bureau of Standards, Washington, D. C.

Table I. Specifications for Aircraft Storage Batteries

Characteristic	Battery								
	Lead-Acid		Nickel-Cadmium		Silver-Zinc			(3)	
	(1)	(2)	(1)	(2)	(1)	(2)			
A—Capacity Determinations									
Weight, pounds.....	55	80	55	80	30	55	75		
Height*.....	8 3/4	10 1/4	8 3/4	10 1/4	7 3/4	8 3/4	10 1/4		
Length*.....	9 15/16	9 15/16	9 15/16	9 15/16	7 5/8	9 15/16	9 15/16		
Width*.....	7 11/16	9 11/16	7 11/16	9 11/16	7 3/4	7 11/16	9 11/16		
Volume†.....	0.387	0.570	0.387	0.570	0.265	0.387	0.570		
Volts.....	24	24	24	24	24	24	24		
No. of cells.....	12	12	19-20	19-20	17	17	17		
Capacity, ampere-hours.....	20	34	20	34	30	50	75		
Rates, amperes‡									
(a).....	10	17	10	17	15	25	37.5		
(b).....	18.2	30	18.2	30	27	45	68		
(c).....	125	200	150	240	150	480	1,350§		
Cutoffs, volts.....	19.2	19.2	19.2	19.2	18.2	18.2	18.2		
	18.0	18.0	18.0	18.0	16.8	16.8	16.8		
	14.4	14.4	14.4	14.4	13.3	13.3	11.9§		
Charge rates									
Initial||.....	8 (85%)	13 (85%)	8 (90%)	14 (90%)	12 (90%)	22 (90%)	34 (90%)		
Finish||.....	3 (55%)	5 (55%)	2 (40%)	3 (40%)	2 (17%)	4 (17%)	6 (17%)		
Total.....	140±2%	140±2%	130±2%	130±2%	107±3%	107±3%	107±3%		
B—Automatic Program (Cycles)									
Discharge, amperes, 1 hour.....	18.2	30	18.2	30	27	45	68		
Charge, 2 hours||.....	8 (85%)	13 (85%)	8 (90%)	14 (90%)	12 (90%)	22 (90%)	34 (90%)		
Finish charge, 2 hours||.....	3 (40%)	5 (40%)	2 (25%)	3 (25%)	2 (15%)	4 (15%)	6 (15%)		
Total.....	122±5%	122±5%	115±5%	115±5%	115±3%	105±3%	105±3		
Stand, hours									
After charge.....	1	1			1	1	1		
After discharge.....			3	3	6	6	6		
Cycles per day.....	4	4	3	3	2	2	2		

* Maximum in inches.

† Maximum in cubic feet.

‡ (a) Also called the 2-hour rate.

(b) Also called the 1-hour rate.

(c) Also called the 5-minute rate at 80 F and the 3-minute rate at 0 F (for the silver-zinc battery the 4-minute rate at 0 F).

§ Intermittent.

|| Plus or minus 5%.

each cell are supplied with special vent caps that permit escape of gas and prevent leakage of electrolyte. They are designed to operate in various positions. Nickel-cadmium cells are housed in plastic, steel, or nylon cases enclosed in steel or cast-aluminum containers. Nickel-cadmium batteries are of two types, vented and sealed. In the vented types free electrolyte is generally used; in the sealed types restricted electrolyte is used. The term "restricted electrolyte" applies when the electrolyte is largely confined in the battery separators; the term "free electrolyte" is used for an excess of electrolyte, i.e., when the electrolyte is not confined to the separators and extends above the upper edges of the plates. The sealed types are provided with a pressure-relief valve to release excessive gas pressure. Even when hermetically sealed they exhibit a slight release of gas. The vented types are provided with Bunsen seals. Silver-zinc cells are housed in plastic or nylon cases enclosed in a plastic-covered steel, fiber glass, or magnesium-alloy container. They are not sealed but retain electrolyte owing to the use of a Bunsen valve or a standpipe type of vent.

Since every pound added to a plane increases the take-off distance, weight of

the batteries is of major concern. Thinner plates, closer spacings, and lighter materials are used in their construction. Lead-acid batteries use thin low antimony-lead grids or lead-plated grids with highly expanded active material, micro-porous-rubber or plastic separators, and in some cases glass-mat retainers. Sintered plates are used in nickel-cadmium batteries and are enclosed, as a rule, in nylon envelopes or retainers. Electroformed plates and cellulosic separators or envelopes are generally used in the construction of silver-zinc batteries. Sulfuric acid having a specific gravity of 1.280 is used in the lead-acid batteries, while the nickel-cadmium and silver-zinc batteries utilize an electrolyte of 30-35% potassium hydroxide.

A common standard size of aircraft battery is a cube, 10 inches on a side, weighing less than 80 pounds, with a nominal capacity of at least 34 ampere-hours at the 2-hour rate. Smaller sizes are also available. Lead-acid, nickel-cadmium, and silver-zinc batteries have all been made in sizes approximating the standard size, and therefore, when weight and space are considered, are interchangeable in aircraft. Specifications for these three types of aircraft batteries are

listed in Table I. Two standard types are available for both lead-acid and nickel-cadmium batteries and three standard types are available in silver-zinc batteries. The charging and discharging rates, capacity determinations and for automatic cycling are given, respectively, parts A and B of Table I.

Batteries in aircraft must survive severe environmental conditions. Tests of the batteries, therefore, must be both electrical and physical. The batteries must withstand abrupt temperature changes, changes in altitude, changes in flight attitude, wide ranges in humidity, acceleration, vibration, shock, and even fungicidal growth. To compound the problems, the electric systems associated with the batteries in aircraft are also subjected to similar changes in environment. Since service conditions for batteries may be ideal under one environment but poor under another, any changes in the associated electric circuit may be acute in regard to the proper maintenance of the battery. This is especially true in regard to the charging of the batteries. Because of these severe conditions in aircraft service, the laboratory testing of aircraft batteries becomes a difficult problem. Even so, since one would hardly take off with a battery about which little or nothing is known, a realistic test of battery type is essential.

In this paper a testing program for aircraft batteries is outlined which is based on three premises: (1) that the program gives realistic data on the main characteristics of the batteries; (2) that relative and meaningful data between samples are obtained; and (3) that all batteries, regardless of type, are to be used under identical conditions, i.e., with identical electric circuits for identical purposes. The last premise may not be a very realistic one from the standpoint of the design and characteristics of the battery, but is a realistic one if economy in aircraft design and interchangeability of battery types are prerequisites.

In setting up a standard test procedure for aircraft batteries, cognizance must be taken of (1) the electric circuit used in aircraft, (2) the use to which the battery may be put, and (3) the speed with which the battery may be expected to be diverted from one application to another. Power in an aircraft is supplied by generators. At the main bus a voltage of 28 or 28.5 volts is maintained. The batteries float or are charged directly on this constant-potential bus. Because of the high power available in aircraft relative to battery capacity there is little tendency for the bus-bar voltage to fall as a result

the heavy currents at the beginning of a charge, and the batteries are, therefore, charged at constant potential. In this way the batteries are kept in readiness for emergency use. Generators with voltage regulators normally set at 27.7 volts constitute a major portion of the electric circuit. When a generator fails, a most likely occurrence, the battery is called upon to supply power for the operation of electric equipment such as radio, radar, and lighting. The battery also serves as a source of stand-by power for the operation of retractable landing gear and in military craft for the operation of gun turrets and bomb bays. Accordingly, when, except for their use as stabilizers in the electric circuits which requires little energy, the batteries are called upon for very little service during flight. Their life should, therefore, be long unless the batteries are mechanically defective (fragile, for example) or are adversely affected by float charge. Under these conditions the testing of batteries under float charge at constant potential may suffice for a battery evaluation.

On the ground, however, the battery may be called upon for engine starting. It is this most severe requirement that governs aircraft battery design. An "aircraft start" may involve the starting of all engines or the starting of one engine and the auxiliary equipment which in turn starts the other engines. In any case, the currents required for engine starting may range from 200 to 400 amperes, depending on the ambient temperature, and for jet engines may be as high as 1,000 or 2,000 amperes. The batteries thus must be capable of sustaining high rates of discharge. After an aircraft start, the battery should be capable of being brought back to full charge within a few minutes so that the full capacity of the battery may be available for other applications. When the battery is fully discharged, as may result from an emergency use or a "flame-out," the battery should be capable of being brought back to a state of full charge within a short time, preferably one hour. In short, an aircraft battery should be capable of being adapted to various applications with speed, even from a fully discharged state. Furthermore, these characteristics should not be critically dependent on ambient temperature or on the heat generated in the battery.

As a result of these service requirements the testing of aircraft batteries on float charge at constant potential does not suffice. The tests must include discharges at various rates and temperatures and studies of the effect of repeated charges on the batteries. Since the bus bar in air-

Table II. Cycle Programs for Lead-Acid, Nickel-Cadmium, and Silver-Zinc Aircraft Batteries

Cycles	Type of Charge	Discharge Rates		
		Lead-Acid	Nickel-Cadmium	Silver-Zinc
1-3	CC*	2-hr.	2-hr.	2-hr
4	CC.	5-min.	5-min.	5-min
5	CC.	1-hr.	1-hr.	1-hr
6	CC.	3-min (0 F)	3-min (0 F)	4-min (0 F)
7	CC.	2-hr.	2-hr.	2-hr
8	CP† (4 hrs)	2-hr.	2-hr.	2-hr
9-22	CC.	1-hr†	1-hr†	1-hr†
23	CC.			2-hr
24	CC.			5-min
25	CC.			5-min
26	CP (4 hrs)			2-hr
23-28	CC.	1-hr†	1-hr†	
29	CC.	2-hr.	2-hr.	
30	CC.	5-min.	5-min	
31	CC.	5-min.	5-min	
32	CC.	5-min.	5-min	
27-33	CC.			1-hr†
33	CC.	2-hr.	2-hr.	1-hr†
34	CP (4 hrs)	2-hr.	2-hr.	2-hr (CC charge)
35	CC (stand)			2-hr
36	CC.			2-hr
35-60	CC.	1-hr†	1-hr†	
37-50	CC.			1-hr†
51	CC.			2-hr
52	CP (4 hrs)			2-hr
53-59	CC.			1-hr†
60	CC.			2-hr
61	CC.	2-hr.	2-hr	
62	CC (stand)	2-hr.	2-hr	
63	CC.	2-hr.	2-hr	
64	CP (4 hrs)	2-hr.	2-hr	
65-90	CC.	1-hr†	1-hr†	
91	CC.	2-hr.	2-hr	
92	CP (4 hrs)	2-hr.	2-hr	
93-99	CC.	1-hr†	1-hr†	
100	CC.	2-hr	2-hr	
Total time (approximate)		40-42 days	47-49 days	39-41 days

* Constant current.

† Constant potential: 28.5 volts for lead-acid and nickel-cadmium, 28 volts for silver-zinc.

‡ Automatic cycling.

Table III. Outputs of Lead-Acid, Nickel-Cadmium, and Silver-Zinc Aircraft Batteries at 80 F and at the 2-Hour Rate (17 Amperes)

Type	Weight, Pounds	Volume, Cubic Feet	Capacity, Ampere-Hours	CC Voltage	Watt-Hours Per Pound	Cycles
Lead-Acid (12 Cells) OCV = 25.6-25.8 Volts						
1	80.0	0.58	35.2	23.4	10.3	100
2	55.0	0.40	23.4	23.8	10.0	46
3	76.4	0.58	37.9	23.3	11.6	100
4	51.3	0.39	21.5	23.6	9.9	0*
5	78.5	0.57	36.8	23.4	11.0	100
6	80.0	0.57	38.4	23.4	11.2	100
Nickel-Cadmium (19-20 Cells) OCV = 25.5-26.5 Volts						
1	76.0	0.53	39.3	23.2	12.1	100
2	54.0	0.48	21.0	23.2	10.0	50
3	80.0	0.57	37.4	24.9	11.6	74
4	77.0	0.57	37.7	24.9	12.2	42
5	78.0	0.57	40.3	24.6	12.7	50
6	80.0	0.57	43.8	24.5	13.3	100
7	70.0	0.48	35.6	24.6	12.5	322†
Silver-Zinc (14 Cells) OCV = 26.0-26.2 Volts						
1	34.0	0.26	43.1	21.1	26.8	35
2	25.5	0.26	40.0	21.3	33.4	25
3	75.0	0.56	110.8	21.4	31.7	30
4	76.0	0.57	76.6	21.4	21.6	25
5	76.0	0.57	65.0	21.1	18.1	25
6	55.0	0.38	55.4	21.3	21.5	10
7	66.9	0.57	157.0	21.5	50.5	43

* Gave 100 cycles but below requirement throughout cycle life.

† With free electrolyte.

craft is at constant potential, it may appear obvious that charging should be done at constant potential. However, the constant-current method of charging is a well-established method of charging

batteries where the internal condition of the cells is not known and offers an opportunity to test the effects of overcharging on battery performance. Accordingly, a more complete evaluation of the over-all

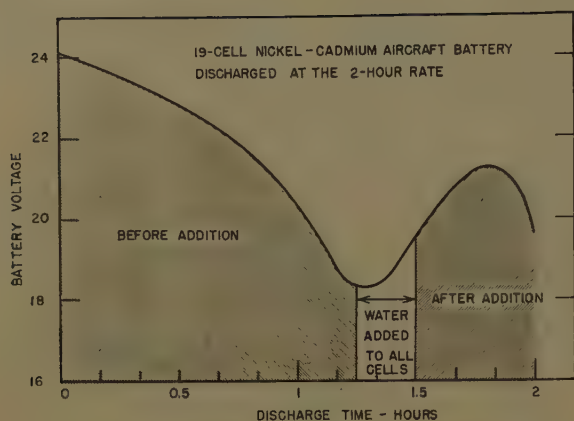


Fig. 1. Effect of water addition on the discharge of nickel-cadmium batteries

characteristics of a battery is afforded by a combination of constant-current and constant-potential charging, and the following standard procedure includes both.

Cycling of Aircraft Batteries

A standard test procedure for testing aircraft batteries is outlined in Table II. It consists of subjecting the batteries to cycles of charge-discharge at constant current with constant-potential charging interspersed at intervals. The total time of the cycle program ranges from 39 to 49 consecutive days. Lead-acid and nickel-cadmium batteries are subjected to at least 100 cycles whereas silver-zinc batteries are subjected to 60 cycles. The total outputs are comparable, however. Two distinct types of discharges are made during the cycling: those made automatically and those made to determine capacity at the rates listed, respectively,

Table IV. Outputs of Lead-Acid, Nickel-Cadmium, and Silver-Zinc Aircraft Batteries at 0 F and High Rates

Type	Rate, Amperes	Watt-Hours Per Pound		Per Cent
		80 F	0 F	
Lead-Acid				
1.....	200.....	4.1.....	2.6.....	.63
2.....	117.....	4.6.....	2.9.....	.63
3.....	200.....	4.8.....	2.5.....	.52
4.....	125.....	4.5.....	2.8.....	.62
5.....	200.....	4.2.....	2.5.....	.60
6.....	200.....	4.9.....	2.8.....	.57
Nickel-Cadmium				
1.....	240.....	7.0.....	3.0.....	.43
2.....	150.....	6.3.....	3.1.....	.49
3.....	180.....	8.4.....	3.1.....	.37
4.....	180.....	8.6.....	3.1.....	.36
5.....	180.....	8.7.....	3.1.....	.36
6.....	180.....	8.9.....	3.2.....	.36
7.....	180.....	9.1.....	7.1.....	.78*
Silver-Zinc				
1.....	300.....	14.5.....	10.3.....	.72
2.....	300.....	22.0.....	18.7.....	.85
3.....	400.....	15.0.....	13.0.....	.87
4.....	180.....	17.1.....	16.3.....	.95
5.....	180.....	17.6.....	16.5.....	.94
6.....	300.....	11.6.....	0.....	0

* With free electrolyte.

in parts A and B of Table I. The automatic discharges are made across a known resistor and the electric circuit is so adjusted that the integrated current drain equals the rated drain. For the capacity discharges the current is maintained constant using a carbon pile and the time required to reach the cutoff voltage, listed in part A of Table I, is accurately determined. Automatic charging is also done across a known resistor whereas charging prior to a capacity determination is accurately controlled at constant current.

In referring to Table I, it may be noted that lead-acid batteries are cycled four times a day, nickel-cadmium batteries three times a day, and silver-zinc batteries twice a day, with the stand times between cycles being different in each case. This becomes necessary because of the differences in the heat produced in the three types of batteries during the charging and discharging processes. The internal resistance of aircraft batteries has been materially reduced in recent years and so they accept a charge, especially a constant-potential charge, more readily. Since the heat capacity of aircraft batteries is low, the heat released during the charging produces an exaggerated change in temperature. Cooling in airplanes is advisable, and if provided, the differences in the permissible cycles per day become inconsequential.

Various makes of lead-acid, nickel-cadmium, and silver-zinc batteries were subjected to the cycle program as outlined in Table II. These results are brought together for the 2-hour rate in Table III. The data show the marked advantage of the silver-zinc batteries, at least regarding output per unit weight and volume. On the average, lead-acid batteries give 10 watt-hours per pound, nickel-cadmium 12, and silver-zinc 29.1. The spread between the results obtained with the silver-zinc batteries is more marked than with the other types. A comment is needed on the cycle life listed in the last column. These data repre-

sent the total number of cycles for which the battery gave capacities above 80% of rated capacity and are minimum values. Lead-acid battery no. 4 is listed as giving no cycles. Actually, this battery gave more than 100 cycles but the capacity was below rated capacity from the start of its cycle life is, therefore, listed as zero. However, the battery performed well and was merely misrated in capacity. After the batteries reached 80% of rated capacity they tended to decay in capacity rapidly. Nickel-cadmium batteries may be restored by short-circuiting and overcharging whereby the total number of cycles is increased somewhat.

The data of Table III also show another significant fact. The first six nickel-cadmium batteries were made with restricted electrolyte and were sealed whereas battery no. 7 was vented and contained free electrolyte. It will be noted that battery no. 7 gave at least 300 cycles of operation while the others gave 10 cycles or less. In this connection it should be emphasized that for military planes a service-free battery is a major aim. This means one that will need no addition of water or electrolyte during its life or in any other way, other than the need for charging, require attention. Battery no. 7 had water added during the cycle tests; the other nickel-cadmium batteries did not. This fact explains in part why battery no. 7 gave so many more cycles than the others. Sealed nickel-cadmium batteries tend to go dry during use and their output thus is limited. In Fig. 1 data are shown for a 19-cell sealed nickel-cadmium battery which had lost an appreciable amount of water during cycling. Water was quickly added during one chosen discharge, and the capacity of the battery is seen to be increased.

In Table IV the effect of temperature on the three types of aircraft batteries

Table V. Retention of Charge at 80 F Per Cent

Type No.*	Lead-Acid	Nickel-Cadmium	Silver-Zinc
1.....	91.....	90.....	89
2.....	98.....	78.....	85
3.....	100.....	78.....	67
4.....	90.....	96.....	88
5.....	96.....	79.....	91
6.....	96.....	91.....	73
7.....	84.....	90.....	80
8.....	45.....	.....	66
9.....	96.....	.....	145
10.....	100.....	.....	0
11.....	.....	.....	60
12.....	.....	.....	95

* Numbers do not refer to the same batteries listed in Tables III and IV.

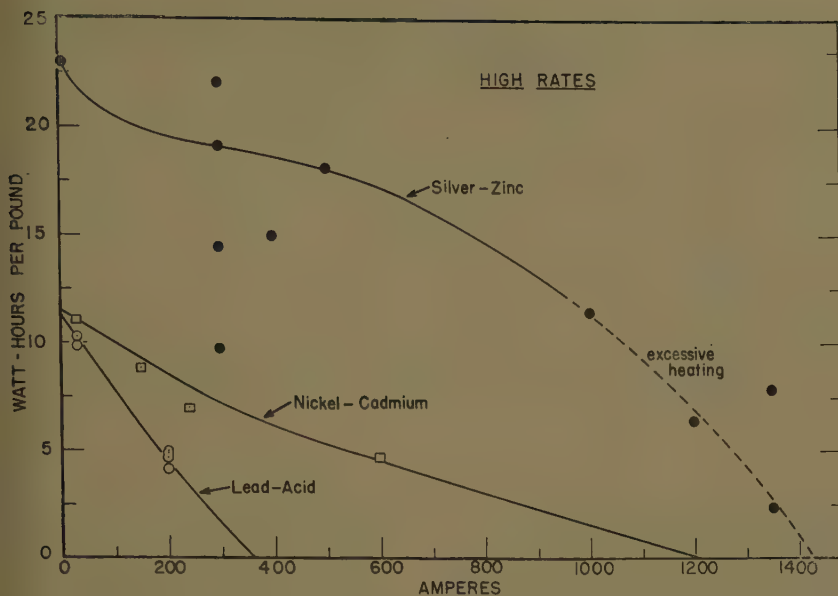
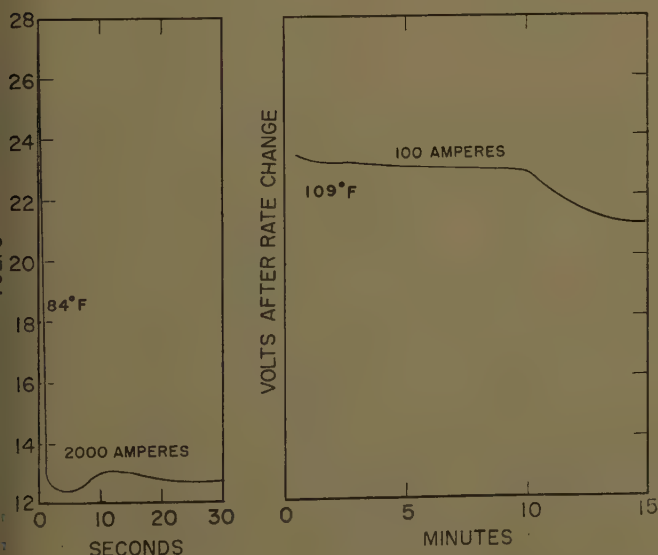


Fig. 2. Comparison of outputs of lead-acid, nickel-cadmium, and silver-zinc batteries as a function of current

own. In these tests the batteries were brought to 0 F (degrees Fahrenheit) prior to the discharges. The ampere drain is not exactly comparable but the data suffice to illustrate the temperature effects. It should be noted again that vented and sealed nickel-cadmium batteries respond differently: vented cells perform better at the lower temperature than sealed cells. The data given for the silver-zinc batteries include effects of recuperation. These batteries show a drop in working voltage below normal cutoff in the early stages of the discharge and then recuperate in voltage as the batteries warm. If recuperation were ignored the percentage of the 80 F output would be less than 30%. Effect of temperature on the charging characteristics of these three types of batteries is discussed later.



Data on the retention of charge, after a 14-day stand on open circuit, for various batteries are listed in Table V. In general, all types exhibit about the same retention of charge: 90 to 100%. However, some makes have exhibited poor retention of charge. These have been

Fig. 3 (below). High-rate discharge of silver-zinc battery

Fig. 4 (right). 400-ampere discharges of lead-acid (A), nickel-cadmium (B), and silver-zinc (C) batteries

A—At 80 F
B—At 0 F

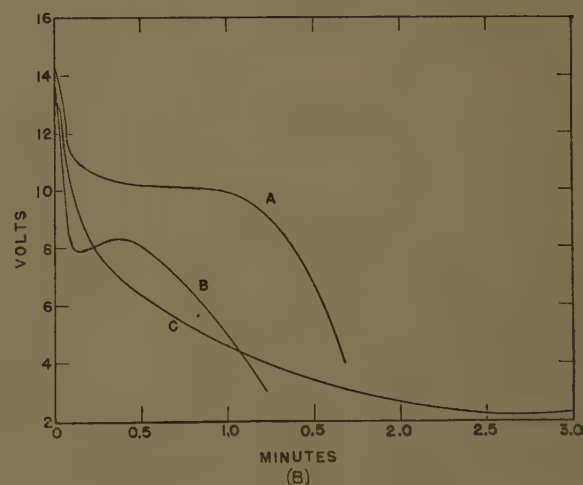
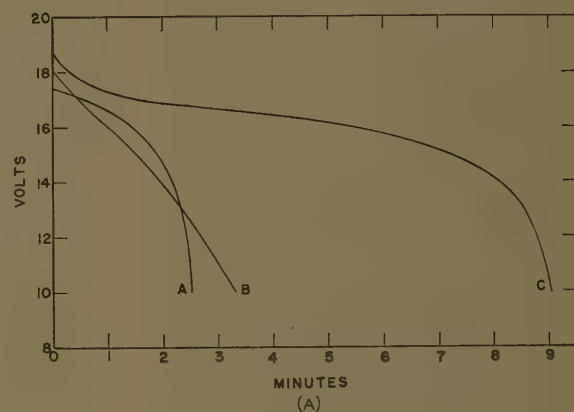


Table VI. Data on Batteries Whose Characteristics Are Shown in Figs. 4-15

Type	Weight, Pounds	Volume, Cubic Feet	Capacity, Ampere-Hours
A—Batteries of Nearly Identical Weight and Volume			
Lead-acid.....	77.1.....	0.63.....	36*
Nickel-cadmium.....	78.3.....	0.59.....	36*
Silver-zinc.....	72.9.....	0.57.....	72*
B—Batteries of Nearly Equal Ampere-Hour Capacity†			
Lead-acid.....	78.6.....	0.57.....	38
Nickel-cadmium.....	81.8.....	0.57.....	47
Silver-zinc.....	33.8.....	0.26.....	42

* Nominal rated capacities were 34, 34, and 75 ampere-hours, respectively.

† Nominal rated capacities were 34 ampere-hours.

defective in other regards and their poor retention of charge has been indicative of faulty construction.

In Fig. 2 data on the outputs of the three types as a function of current drain are presented. This figure shows the high rates sustained by the silver-zinc battery. Above 1,000 amperes, these batteries must be removed from the circuit prior to attainment of normal cutoff voltages owing to excessive heating. However, in practice the need for high-current drains is only intermittent, such as

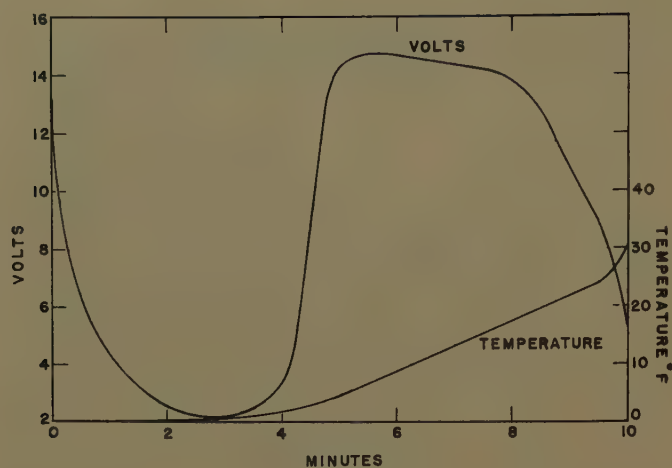


Fig. 5. Effect of internal warming on silver-zinc battery at 0 F

2,000 amperes for 30 seconds for engine starting followed by discharges at 100 amperes for circuit stabilization or auxiliary use. In this case the silver-zinc battery does not show excessive heating. A typical discharge of a silver-zinc battery under these conditions is given in Fig. 3.

Discharge Characteristics of Aircraft Batteries

In the foregoing section some data obtained during the cycling of lead-acid, nickel-cadmium, and silver-zinc batteries were presented. These data referred mostly to outputs obtained under specified cycle conditions. Additional data on these three types of batteries are presented in this section and include some data at -20°F . For this discussion, batteries of nearly equal weight and volume were chosen. These batteries may, therefore, be interchangeable in aircraft where space and weight are the dominant issues. Specifically, the three batteries discussed had the weight, volume, and ampere-hour capacity (at the 2-hour rate) as given in part A of Table VI.

Fig. 4(A) shows the output given by the fully charged lead-acid (A), nickel-cadmium (B), and silver-zinc (C) batteries at 80°F and for a 400-ampere discharge. (A, B, and C are used in all figures to represent, respectively, the lead-acid, sealed nickel-cadmium, and silver-zinc batteries.) This figure shows the advantage of the silver-zinc battery. The difference between the lead-acid and nickel-cadmium batteries is not appreciable. The situation is quite different, however, at 0°F as shown in Fig. 4(B). The silver-zinc battery now gives less output than either the lead-acid or nickel-cadmium battery and the lead-acid battery now gives somewhat more output than the nickel-cadmium battery. However, as stated in the previous section, the

silver-zinc battery warms on discharges sufficiently to cause a large recuperation in voltage after about 3 minutes; see Fig. 5. For many applications, however, voltage tolerance is severe, and the recuperation shown in Fig. 5 then cannot be effectively used.

Data obtained on the three battery types at the somewhat lower rate of 180 amperes, at 80°F , 0°F , and -20°F are given in Fig. 6. At 80°F , the silver-zinc battery again shows higher output than the other two and the nickel-cadmium battery now shows higher output than the lead-acid battery. At 0°F , Fig. 6 (B), the silver-zinc battery shows only slightly more output than the other two; here again the silver-zinc battery shows voltage recuperation owing to internal heating and if this recuperation is taken into account its output exceeds that obtained for the other two types of batteries. At -20°F , Fig. 6(C), only the lead-acid battery has a usable output; the behavior of the other two is erratic. Again the silver-zinc battery shows voltage recovery but somewhat erratically.

Performance of the batteries at a moderate drain of 50 amperes at 80°F and 0°F is shown in Fig. 7. At 80°F , Fig. 7(A), the silver-zinc battery gives nearly twice the output of the other two. At 0°F , Fig. 7(B), lead-acid and nickel-cadmium batteries behave almost identically whereas the silver-zinc battery shows quite markedly the voltage recovery discussed previously. Initially this battery drops in voltage at a fast rate but recovers to give nearly four times the output of the other two types. For applications requiring power for only 10 or 20 minutes, however, this recovery is of no advantage. One must decide in any application whether it is electrical quantity, electric energy, or voltage constancy that is the more significant.

Finally, the traits of the three types of batteries at low-current drains, as may be

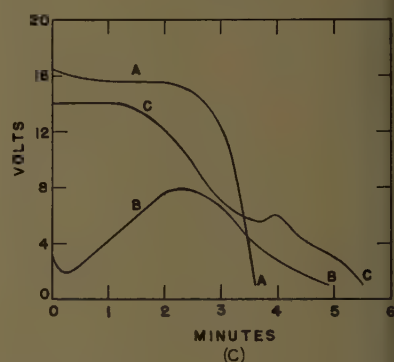
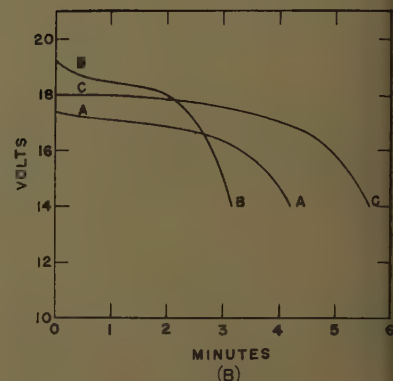
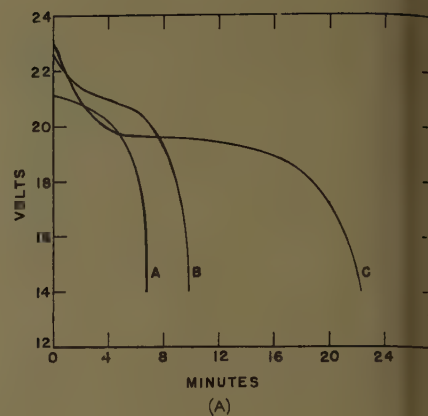


Fig. 6. 180-ampere discharges of subject batteries

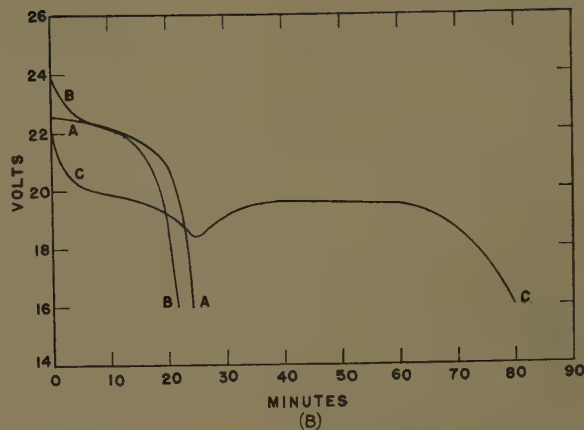
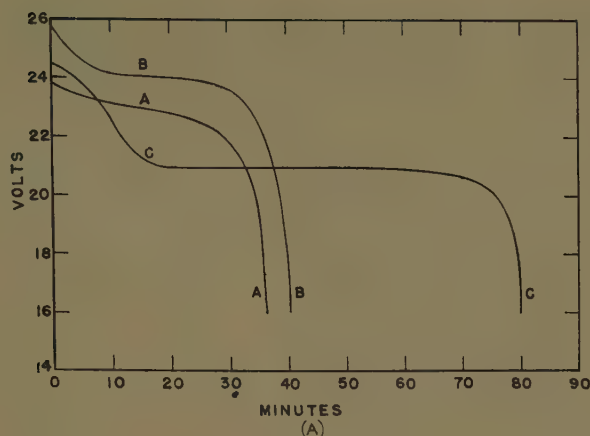
A—At 80°F
B—At 0°F
C—At -20°F

needed to operate panel instruments, are given in Fig. 8. The current drain was 7.2 amperes, which corresponds to the 1-hour rate. Here, again, the higher output obtained with silver-zinc batteries is apparent; at -20°F the voltage of the silver-zinc battery is somewhat erratic but the output is still relatively high. At -20°F the nickel-cadmium battery shows a maximum in its discharge curve. This behavior arises from internal heating.

The foregoing characteristics referred to batteries of nearly equal weight and volume. However, the ampere-hour capacity differed markedly. While the lead-acid and nickel-cadmium batteries had nominal capacities of 34 amperes

7. 50-ampere discharges of subject batteries

—At 80 F
—At 0 F



...the silver-zinc battery had a nominal ampere-hour capacity of 75. This difference was reflected in the discharge curves. In Figs. 9-12 comparisons are given of batteries of the same nominal ampere-hour capacity (data on the weight and volume of the batteries are given in part B of Table VI). In each figure the temperature change which occurred during the discharge is shown for each type. The silver-zinc and nickel-cadmium batteries show about the same rate of temperature rise and a greater rise than that shown by lead-acid batteries at low currents (2- and 1-hour rates) while at high currents (5- and 3-minute rates) there is not much difference between the

types. These figures show that although nearly the same ampere-hour capacity is obtained between types the watt-hours differ, with the silver-zinc system giving the least. Figs. 9 and 10 also show the initial large drop in working voltage for the silver-zinc types. At 0 F the silver-zinc battery, in this comparison, shows poor output but if a short stand period of one minute (Fig. 12) is taken during the discharge, the output is materially improved because of internal heating.

Charge Characteristics of Aircraft Batteries

A study of the charging characteristics of aircraft batteries shows some important factors which are pertinent to their use on airplanes. Since, in practice, batteries are charged at constant potential on planes, the charging of batteries under these conditions was especially studied. Constant-potential charging curves for the three

battery types are shown in Figs. 13, 14, and 15 for 120 F, 80 F, 0 F, and -20 F. A constant potential of 28 volts was used for the first two temperatures, 28.5 volts for 0 F, and 29 volts for -20 F. In each figure the ampere-hour output of the previous discharge is given as well as the ampere-hour input received by the battery within 4 hours. The percentage of charge received by the battery within this specified time is also listed.

Fig. 13(A) shows some very important traits of the three batteries. It may be seen that the silver-zinc battery accepts a high initial inrush of current. The current then drops so rapidly that the battery, although only initially 67% discharged ($49.7 \text{ amp-hours} / 75 \text{ amp-hours} = 0.67$), is only recharged 103% within 4 hours. Since, on the average, silver-zinc batteries should be given 107% of previous outputs (see part A, Table I) to be fully charged, the battery was not fully charged. Of course, a longer time could be used to effect a full charge. If the potential for constant-potential charging were raised, the initial inrush of current would be greater and could seriously overload the generator. The charging curves for the lead-acid and nickel-cadmium batteries are normal during the

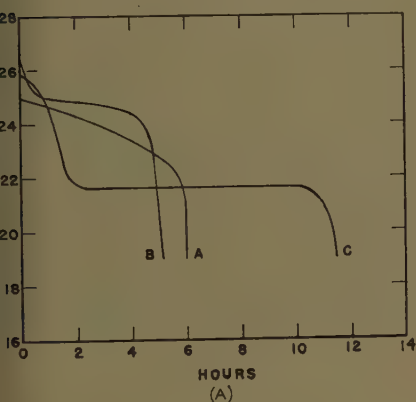
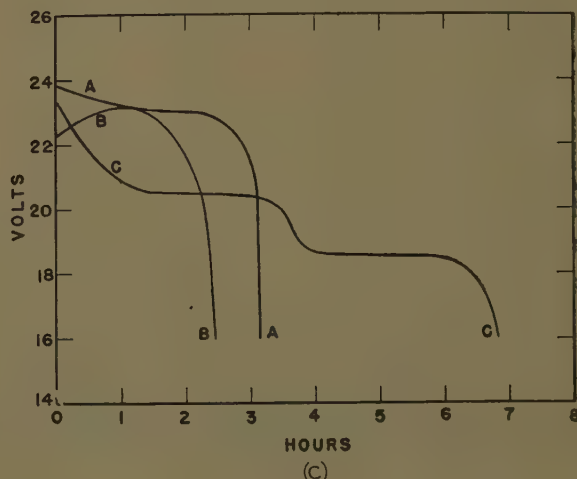
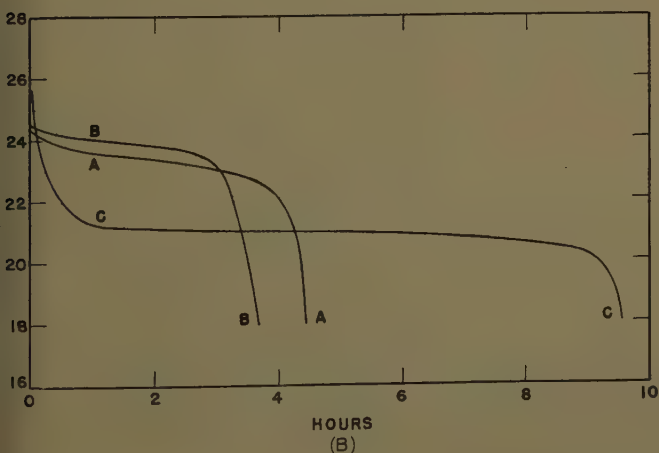


Fig. 8. 7.2-ampere discharges of subject batteries

A—At 80 F
B—At 0 F
C—At -20 F



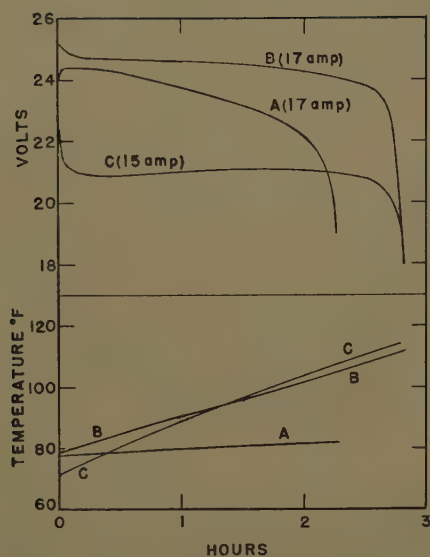


Fig. 9. Two-hour rate discharges of subject batteries at 80 F

early stages of the charge. However, at a certain point the rise in temperature in nickel-cadmium batteries decreases the internal resistance of the battery sufficiently to more than offset the increasing counter electromotive force and the charging current begins to rise. As the charging current rises, so does the temperature leading to the phenomenon known as "vicious cycling": as the current rises so does the temperature and as the temperature rises so does the current until the battery "burns up." In the case shown in Fig. 13(A) a temperature of 155 F was attained within 3½ hours. If the charging were continued the current acceptance and the temperature would both rise. To prevent this in practice nickel-cadmium batteries are

supplied with thermostats that limit the charging when 135 F is reached. A description of a typical thermostat is given later.

Similar data for 80 F are given in Fig. 13(B). Here, again, the initial high inrush of current is found for silver-zinc batteries. Again at 28 volts the silver-zinc battery does not receive sufficient charge within 4 hours; the amount received is 93%. Considerably longer charging times would be required for full charge since the charging current becomes quite low at the end of 4 hours. In this case, the nickel-cadmium battery shows no tendency to go into the vicious cycle. In Fig. 14 data are given on batteries that had been cooled to 0 F. The initial high inrush of current still persists for the silver-zinc battery. The charging curves are normal but the three batteries received less than 65% of charge in 4 hours even with the charging voltage raised to 28.5 volts. In this case all batteries were essentially in a fully discharged state at the start of the charging. The nickel-cadmium and silver-zinc batteries accept charge better than the lead-acid battery at 0 F, but there is some indication that over longer charging periods the lead-acid battery would accept comparable charges.

Fig. 15 shows charging characteristics of the three batteries at -20 F. The charging curves are similar to those obtained at 0 F but, even with the charging voltage raised to 29 volts, it is not feasible effectively to charge any of the batteries at -20 F. The nickel-cadmium battery received only 50% of charge and the other two types received much less. Of course, a higher charge would be re-

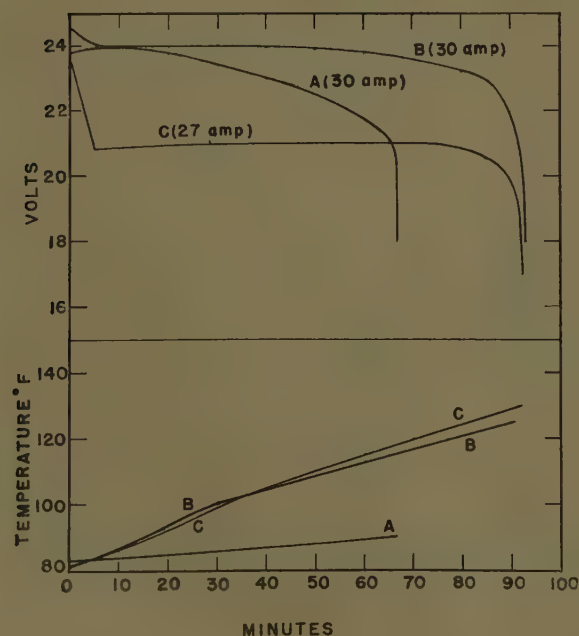


Fig. 10 (left). One-hour rate discharges of subject batteries at 80 F

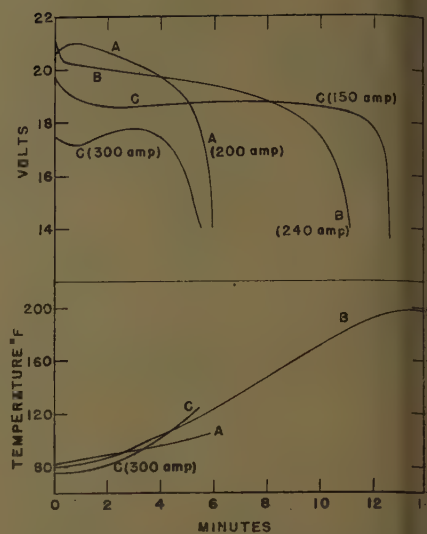


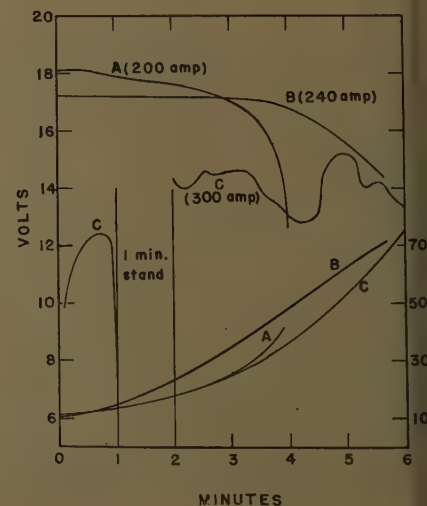
Fig. 11. Five-minute rate discharges of subject batteries at 80 F

ceived by the batteries if the charging time were extended; this would be impractical, however.

The above charging characteristics become more pronounced when the battery is more fully discharged at the start of the charge since more heat is then generated during the charging process. The effects are less than when the batteries are on float charge. On cycling at constant potential the batteries tend to decline in capacity.

A diagram of a typical thermostat used to limit the charging when battery temperature becomes too high is shown in Fig. 16. The positive terminal of the battery is joined to a current coil (CC) housed in the battery and thence to the main battery contactor (BC) and on to the aircraft bus. A second lead runs from the positive battery terminal through the thermostat (BT) built in the battery to the field of the main battery contactor through a single-throw double-pole switch (STDP). The thermostat is set to open

Fig. 12 (right). Three-minute rate discharges of subject batteries at 0 F



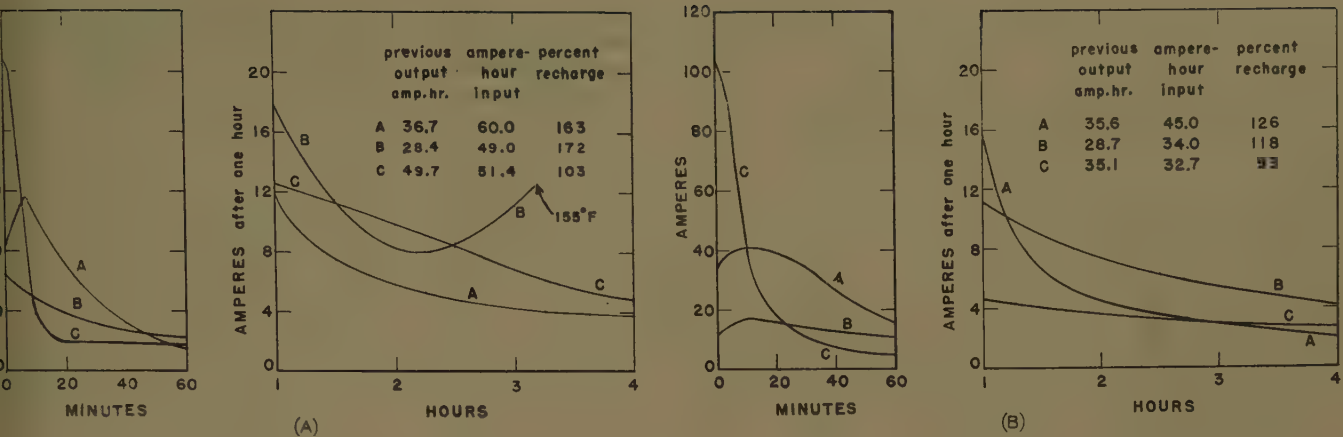


Fig. 13. Constant-potential charging (28 volts) of subject batteries

A—At 120 F
B—At 80 F

135 F. A polarized relay (PR) is alleled with the thermostat. A third d from the positive battery terminal s through a voltage coil (VC) and the gle-throw double-pole switch to the erator side from the main battery con- tor. The polarized relay is activated the voltage and current coils. When battery is on charge the main battery tactor and thermostat are closed and polarized relay open. If the charg- voltage becomes too high and the erty temperature reaches 135 F the rmostat opens, resulting in the open- of the battery contactor. The ttery is now off charge. If the bus tage drops so that battery power is quired the polarized relay closes hereby the main battery contactor is sed when the bus voltage is 0.3 volt ow battery voltage. The current nding will hold the polarized relay sed as long as a minimum of 4 amperes flowing from the battery. Restoration bus voltage will open the polarized

relay and the main battery contactor if the battery is still hot. The thermo- stat will close when the battery tem- perature has dropped to 125 F and the or- iginal normal circuits will be re-es- tablished. The thermostat is generally welded to the outside of one cell of the battery and the other parts of the control are housed in a case mounted in the battery container near the quick- disconnect receptacle.

The above system may also be used to provide self-heating of batteries at low temperatures, especially silver-zinc types. A lead is connected to the negative ter- minal through a second thermostat (HT) that will open at any temperature above 0 F. A lead from this thermostat goes to a heater (H) of about 4-ohm resistance and thence to the bus side of a single- throw double-pole switch. The heater is best placed at the bottom of the battery case. Closing the battery switch will permit about 100 watts to heat the battery internally if the temperature of

the battery is initially below 0 F. The output at the higher temperature more than offsets the energy utilized to heat the battery.

Physical Tests of Aircraft Batteries

Physical tests of aircraft batteries should include tests of the effects of (1) altitude, (2) operating position, (3) mechanical shock, (4) thermal shock, (5) vibration, (6) operation temperature, and (7) electrolyte level on battery performance, as well as tests of (8) gas tightness of cells, (9) sealing compound, (10) insulation, (11) intercell connectors, and (12) vent caps. Space will not permit a complete discussion of all these; suffice it to say that most aircraft batteries meet the physical requirements. Brief descriptions of the physical tests follow.

ALTITUDE

A fully charged battery at 80 F is placed in an altitude chamber at sea level and

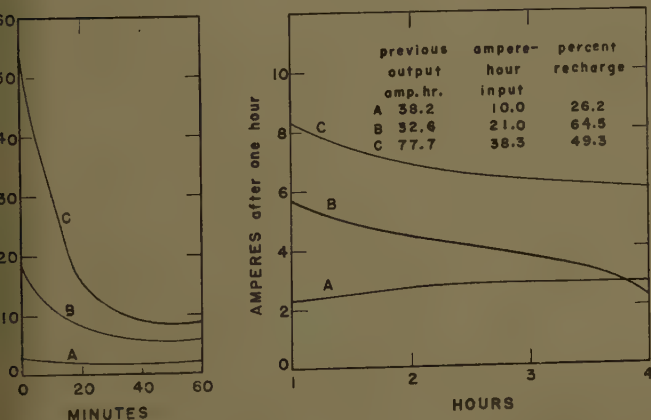


Fig. 14. Constant-potential charging (28.5 volts) of subject batteries at 0 F

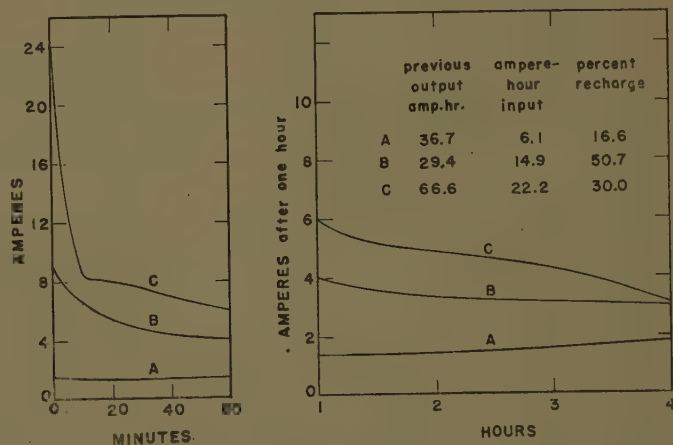


Fig. 15. Constant-potential charging (29 volts) of subject batteries at -20 F

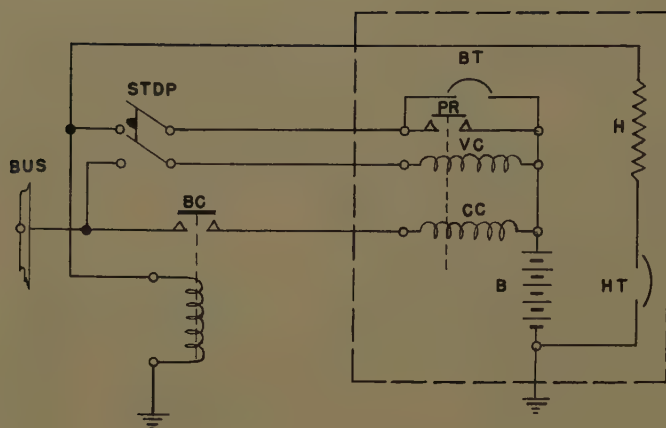


Fig. 16. Over-temperature and heating circuits for aircraft batteries

discharged at the 3-minute rate to normal cutoff voltage (see part A of Table I for 3-minute rates and cutoff voltages). The temperature of the chamber and battery is then reduced to 14 F (-10 degrees centigrade) and the discharged battery is charged at a constant potential of 28 volts for 2.3 hours as the air pressure is reduced to an altitude corresponding to 50,000 feet above sea level. The pressure change is accomplished within 15 minutes. During the last 5 minutes of charge the pressure is restored to sea level. The battery is then discharged at the 3-minute rate to the normal cutoff voltage. This procedure is repeated twice with the third discharge being made at 80 F. During the charging at reduced pressure the battery is inspected for electrolyte flooding or boiling. No flooding or boiling of electrolyte is acceptable and altitude changes should have no adverse effect on capacity. Most aircraft batteries meet these requirements. The silver-zinc batteries show their usual response to constant-potential charges.

OPERATING POSITION

A fully charged battery at 80 F is discharged at the 5-minute rate (Table I) to the normal cutoff voltage. After 2 minutes of discharge the battery is inverted without interrupting the discharge and after two additional minutes of discharge the battery is restored to its normal operating position. Voltage readings are taken 5 seconds before and after each change in position. The battery is expected to deliver its full rated capacity under these conditions and the voltage variation during changes in position is not expected to exceed 0.5 volt. Also, no leakage of electrolyte should occur. In general, aircraft batteries meet these requirements except for the voltage variation where voltage changes as much as 0.8 volt have been observed.

These changes do not affect capacity, however.

MECHANICAL SHOCK

A battery is submitted to an average acceleration of 35 g acting between 10 and 20 milliseconds and then tested for shock in the direction of the three major axes. The shock in the vertical axis is in the direction which tends to eject cells from the battery container. The battery is mounted in the carrier in such a way that the force acceleration is transmitted to the hold-down bar in the normal manner. Battery voltages are recorded by a graphic meter during the shock test. No battery fractures or voltage fluctuations are acceptable.

THERMAL SHOCK

A fully charged battery is discharged at 80 F at the 2-hour rate to the normal cutoff voltage (see part A of Table I for 2-hour rates and cutoff voltages). It is then recharged and placed immediately in an ambient temperature of 185 F and after 4 hours transferred to an ambient temperature of -40 F and kept there for 4 hours. The battery is then returned to 185 F and the procedure of cooling and heating repeated twice. The battery is then warmed from -40 F to 80 F and a discharge made again at the 2-hour rate. During this test the battery is expected to show no fractures and little or no loss in capacity.

VIBRATION

A fully charged battery is mounted on a vibrator in the upright position; for lead-acid batteries the vent caps are in place. The battery is bolted to the vibrator table with long bolts attached to the hold-down straps on the cover as in an actual aircraft installation. Vibration is applied with the frequency cycling between 10 and 500 cps (cycles per second) in 15-minute cycles with an acceleration

of 5 g. A total of four 15-minute cycle vibration are made and during each frequency is varied from a minimum of 10 cps to a maximum of 500 cps and back to 10 cps. One 30-second discharge is made at the 1-hour rate during each cycle. In general no voltage variations are noted but resonance points, usually in the battery cover, appear at points generally above 100 cps. Therefore, the battery is further vibrated for 30 minutes at each of the frequencies for which resonance is observed. No adverse effects due to vibration are observed in both constructed batteries.

OPERATION TEMPERATURE

This test is designed to ascertain if a battery has a tendency to go into a "vicious cycle." A fully charged battery is heated in an ambient temperature of 120 F for 6 hours, followed by a discharge at the 1-hour rate. No decrease in capacity is permissible. The battery is then fully charged and placed in an ambient temperature of 140 F for 7 hours and then discharged at the 5-minute rate to cutoff voltage and immediately charged at a constant potential of 30 volts for 2 hours. Measurements are made of the current and temperature rise during the constant-potential charge. The last test is then repeated.

ELECTROLYTE LEVEL

This test is applied mainly to lead-acid batteries with nonspill vent caps. The electrolyte level is adjusted until it is 1 inch above the baffle after the battery has been completely discharged at the 2-hour rate. The battery is then recharged at a rate 20% higher than the normal rate until the total charge is 150% of rated capacity. Spraying and loss of electrolyte are looked for and the battery then discharged at the 1-hour rate. No loss in capacity should be observed and no spraying or loss of electrolyte. The same test may be applied to silver-zinc batteries and to vented nickel-cadmium batteries. For sealed nickel-cadmium batteries the electrolyte level is tested as described in connection with Fig. 1.

GAS TIGHTNESS OF CELLS

A fully charged battery at 80 F is subjected to 5 pounds per square inch for 15 minutes by air passing through the filling hole in the cell cover. This test is used, as a rule, for sealed nickel-cadmium batteries.

SEALING COMPOUND (WHEN APPLICABLE)

A fully charged battery is placed in an ambient temperature of 200 F for 6 hours.

removed and immediately tilted 90 degrees and kept in that position for 5 minutes. No flow of sealing compound and no leakage of electrolyte should result.

TEST PROCEDURE

The current-carrying parts are expected to be capable of withstanding a current of 2,500 volts (rms) at commercial frequency for 1 minute between the current-carrying parts and the container. This test is also known as a dielectric test.

INTERCELL CONNECTORS

This test is designed to test the ability of the intercell connectors to conduct high currents. A fully discharged battery is charged at a constant potential of 28 volts for 24 hours or until the battery temperature reaches 120 F, whichever occurs first. Termination of the charge the battery is placed in a constant-temperature oven at 120 F for 2 hours and then discharged at 120 F at a rate equal to 200% of the fastest specified rate (see part A of Table I) for 1 minute. No failure of the current-carrying parts should occur.

VALVE CAPS

This test is applied specifically to lead-acid cells. Valves are required to close between 42 and 48 degrees when the back

pressure of the gas passing through the valve is equal to 1 cm Hg (centimeters of mercury). When the valve is closed and under a static pressure of 1 cm Hg it is required to open at an angle not greater than 38 degrees and not less than 32 degrees. Under a static pressure of 50 cm Hg the valve is required to open when in the vertical position. These requirements simulate requirements of jet planes. They are also required to withstand immersion in sulfuric acid of specific gravity of 1.300 for 10 days at 200 F in the vertical position and to meet the mechanical shock, thermal shock, and vibration tests previously outlined.

Summary

In the foregoing, some characteristics of lead-acid, nickel-cadmium, and silver-zinc aircraft batteries were presented. Many advantages of each system were emphasized and certain disadvantages mentioned. The latter suggest areas where more research is needed. Efforts are needed to improve cycle life (especially under constant-potential charging), charge retention, charge acceptance, and low-temperature performance. With increased use of jet planes, missiles, and space vehicles where high temperatures are involved, batteries must be designed

to withstand unusually high temperatures. As one example, since batteries are cut out of a charging circuit at 135 F or higher, it is obvious that batteries would be totally ineffective in an environment where the ambient temperature is 135 F or higher. The batteries would then receive no charge. At present, reserve batteries, activated at the time of use, offer a solution to this severe environmental condition for auxiliary but not for prime power. More research is needed to find ways to increase hydrogen overvoltage on lead, cadmium, and zinc whereby the gassing of batteries would become less severe. More studies of oxygen overvoltage are also needed.

References

1. D. C. POWER SYSTEMS FOR AIRCRAFT (book), R. H. Kaufman, H. J. Finison. John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York, N. Y., 1952.
2. STORAGE BATTERIES (book), G. W. Vinal. John Wiley & Sons, Inc., fourth edition, 1955.
3. AIRCRAFT BATTERIES AND THEIR BEHAVIOR ON CONSTANT-POTENTIAL CHARGE, G. A. Earwicker. *Proceedings, Institution of Electrical Engineers*, London, England, vol. 103, pt. A, supplement no. 1, 1956, p. 180.
4. A REVIEW OF THE STATE OF THE ART AND FUTURE TRENDS IN ELECTROCHEMICAL BATTERY SYSTEMS. I. THE MORE COMMON SYSTEMS, W. J. Hamer. *Proceedings, Seminar on Advanced Energy Sources and Conversion Techniques*, No. AD209301, Armed Services Technical Information Agency, Washington, D. C. (No. P.B. 151461 Office of Technical Services, U. S. Department of Commerce), vol. 1, Nov. 1958.

Analyzing the Transient Response of a Nonlinear Servosystem by the Phase-Plane Method

W. A. STEIN
MEMBER AIEE

IT IS COMMON practice in college servomechanism laboratories to build a simple "linear" servomechanism system in which the student can determine the frequency and transient response. This simple system is generally composed

of an error detector, electronic amplifier, and 2-phase servomotor as illustrated in Fig. 1. The student is immediately disturbed to discover that both the frequency and transient responses depend on the magnitude of the input signal. This is, of course, contrary to linear theory. The only conclusion that can be

reached is that the apparently linear system just is not linear due to the characteristics of the 2-phase motor. In a previous publication it was shown why the M_p and resonant frequency of the frequency response characteristics varied with the magnitude of the input signal.¹ It is the purpose of this paper to show how the nonlinear characteristics of the 2-phase motor influences the transient response of the system. This analysis is best carried out by means of the phase-plane method.

Motor Characteristics From Dynamometer Tests

In this analysis the speed versus torque curves of the 2-phase motor must be known in both the first and fourth quad-

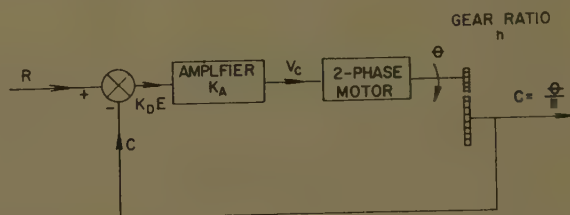
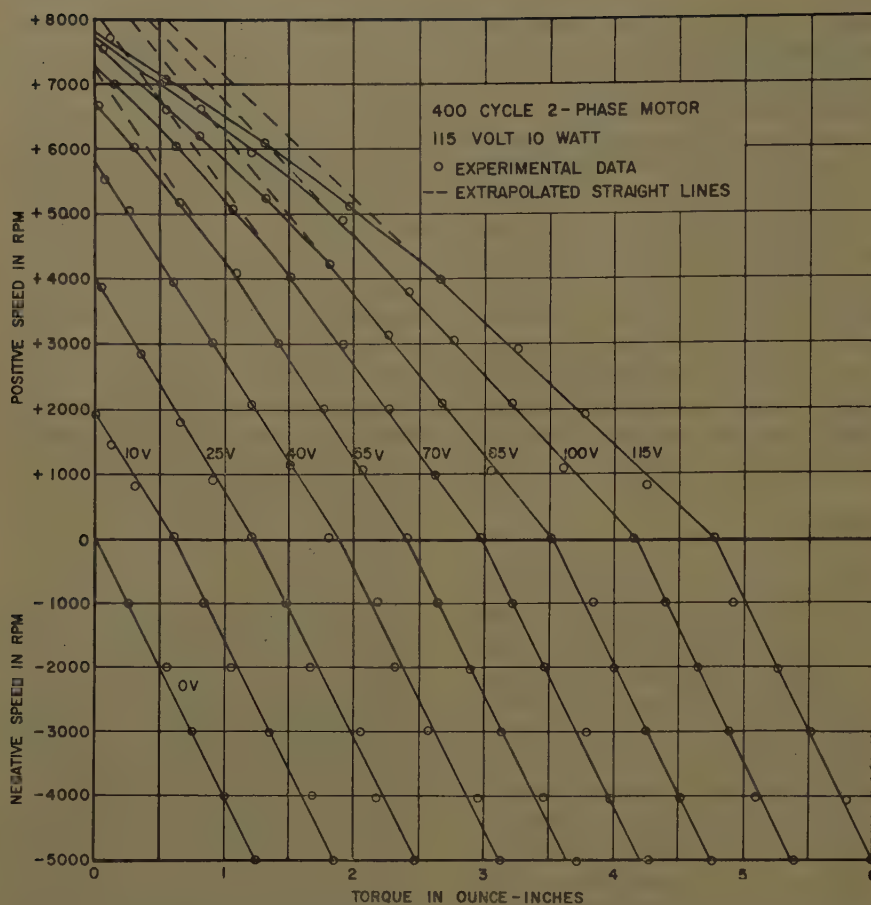


Fig. 1. Block diagram of simple servomechanism

Order 60-863, recommended by the AIEE Feedback Control Systems Committee and approved by the AIEE Technical Operations Department for presentation at the AIEE Summer General Meeting, Atlantic City, N. J., June 19-24, 1960. Manuscript submitted February 18, 1959; made available for printing May 4, 1960.

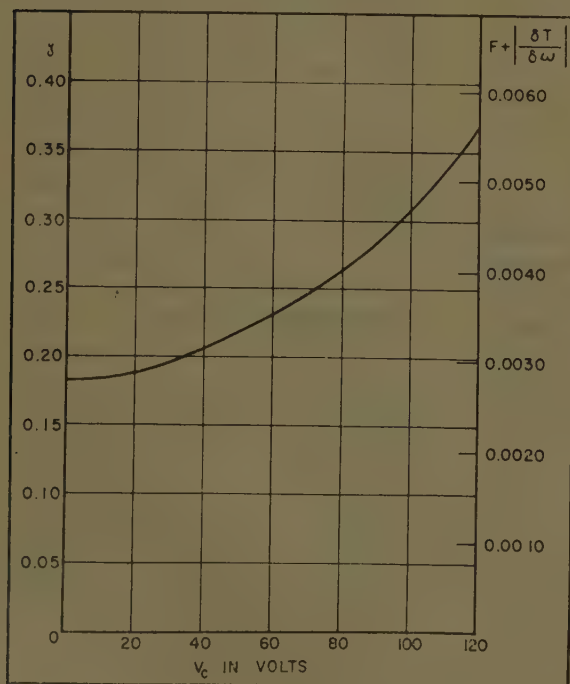
W. A. STEIN (deceased), was with the United States Naval Postgraduate School, Monterey, Calif.

The author wished to acknowledge the assistance of the Office of Naval Research in obtaining special equipment for this project.



rants for different values of voltage on the control winding, V_c . This requires a special dynamometer capable of measuring both motor and braking torques of these motors.²

experimentally obtained on the special dynamometer for a small 10-watt motor. A characteristic of such a dynamometer is that in the motor range, the dynamometer indicates the output torque; hence, the viscous friction torque of the



motor and load must be added to obtain the developed torque. In the brake zone the dynamometer reads the developed torque directly. This is a fine point as the viscous friction torque is only a small percentage of the output torque in a good ball-bearing motor and the error introduced by neglecting this is probably less than the inaccuracies introduced by heating effects.

The general conclusions reached from the speed-torque curves of Fig. 2, which hold not only for this particular 10-watt motor but also for some half dozen 2-ph instrument servomotors, which the author has also tested, are listed.

1. The stalled torque is proportional the voltage on the control winding

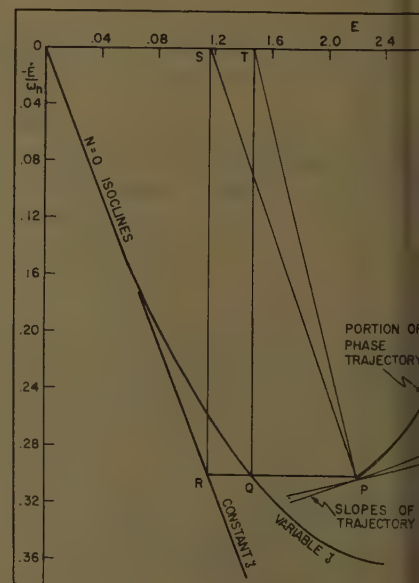
$$T_{\text{stalled}} = A V_c$$

- where A is the constant of proportionality.
2. Within the normal range of operation, below 50% rated speed, the curves are essentially straight lines. For the low speed portion the family of curves is given by the equation

$$T = A V_c - \left| \frac{\partial T}{\partial \omega} \right| \omega$$

3. In the braking range the torque-speed characteristics are straight parallel lines.

Derivation of Isocline Equations



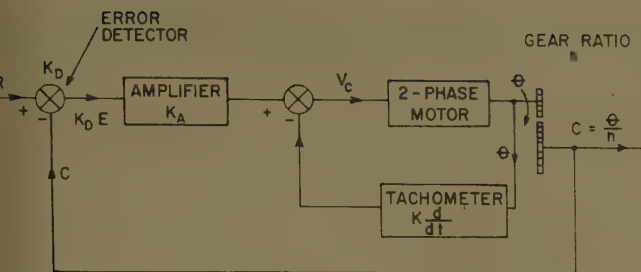


Fig. 5. Block diagram of servomechanism with tachometer feedback

ted the friction torque at maximum speed was about 1 or 2% of the full load torque and had little effect on $\partial T/\partial \omega$; hence, the error introduced by using equation 2 instead of the developed torque is very small.

Assume that all the developed torque is used in accelerating the inertia load and overcoming the viscous friction of the motor and load.

$$J\ddot{\theta} + F\dot{\theta} \quad (3)$$

the error is defined as

$$E = (R - C)K_D \quad (4)$$

and the controlled variable C is related to the motor output θ by

$$C = \frac{\theta}{n} \quad (5)$$

where n is the gear ratio. The 2nd order differential equation describing the system is therefore

$$J\ddot{\theta} + \left(F + \left|\frac{\partial T}{\partial \omega}\right|\right)\dot{\theta} + \frac{AK_D K_A}{Jn}E = 0 \quad (6)$$

the control winding voltage V_c was eliminated by recognizing that in the simple system

$$V_c = K_A E \quad (7)$$

The equation of the isoclines can be determined by substituting $d\dot{E}/dt$ for \ddot{E}

and dividing each term of the equation by either \dot{E} or its equivalent dE/dt

$$\dot{E} = \frac{-AK_A K_D E}{JN + \left(F + \left|\frac{\partial T}{\partial \omega}\right|\right)n} \quad (8)$$

The N of equation 8 is defined as being the slope of the phase trajectory, $N \equiv d\dot{E}/dE$.

It is immediately apparent that the isoclines are not straight lines as $\partial T/\partial \omega$ is a function of V_c which in turn is proportional to the error signal E .

The general form for the differential equation of a linear 2nd order servomechanism with a step input is

$$\ddot{E} + 2\zeta\omega_n\dot{E} + \omega_n^2 E = 0 \quad (9)$$

By comparing equation 6 with equation 9, several valuable relationships are derived:

$$\omega_n = \frac{AK_D K_A}{Jn} \quad (10)$$

$$\zeta = 1/2 \sqrt{\frac{n}{AK_D K_A J}} \left(F + \left|\frac{\partial T}{\partial \omega}\right|\right) \quad (11)$$

The $\partial T/\partial \omega$ is evaluated in ounce-inches per radian per second from the reciprocal of the slopes of the dynamometer curves of Fig. 2. It will be observed in Fig. 3 that the $F + |\partial T/\partial \omega|$ is a function of the control field voltage V_c . The natural frequency ω_n of the system is then independent of V_c , but

the damping ratio ζ of this nonlinear system will fluctuate during the transient response. When the voltage on the control field is large, $\partial T/\partial \omega$ will also be large. As seen from equation 11 the system becomes less damped as it comes into correspondence. The isocline equation 6 can be put into the more useful general form of equation 12.

$$\dot{E} = \frac{-\omega_n^2 E}{N + 2\zeta\omega_n} \quad (12)$$

Since ζ is not a constant the isoclines will not be straight lines.

Obtaining the Phase Trajectories

The variation of $\partial T/\partial \omega$ in the first quadrant of the speed-torque curves was plotted in Fig. 3; however, it will be observed that in the fourth quadrant or braking range the curves are all straight parallel lines and $\partial T/\partial \omega$ is a constant. This is a property of all the 2-phase motors tested by the author and also was observed by independent researchers.³⁻⁴ In drawing the isoclines special caution must be used. In quadrants II and IV of the phase plane, the values of $\partial T/\partial \omega$ must be those measured in the first quadrant of the speed-torque curves; whereas, in the I and III quadrants of the phase plane, the value of $\partial T/\partial \omega$ is invariant and is obtained from the fourth quadrant of the speed-torque curves. This means that in the I and III quadrants the isoclines will be straight radial lines originating from the origin. This is explained in detail in Appendix I.

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{-f(y) - x}{y} \quad (13)$$

where $f(y)$ represents a function of y . Equation 9 can be manipulated into a form which satisfies this requirement.

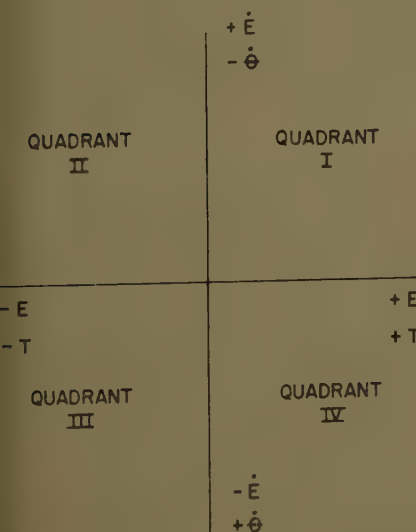
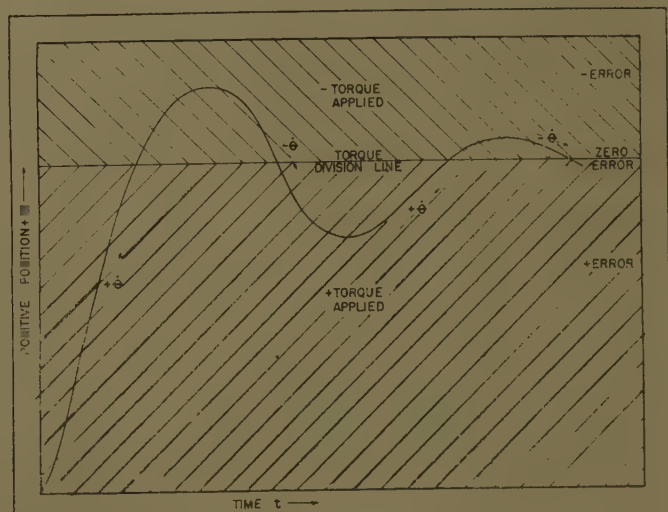


Fig. 6 (left). The phase-plane axes with numbered quadrants

Fig. 7 (right). Sketch of transient response with regions of positive and negative torque, and positive and negative speed indicated



$$\frac{d\left(\frac{\dot{E}}{\omega_n}\right)}{dE} = \frac{-2\zeta\left(\frac{\dot{E}}{\omega_n}\right) - E}{\frac{\dot{E}}{\omega_n}} \quad (14)$$

Lienard's construction is a relatively simple graphical method for determining the slope of the phase trajectory at any point P in the \dot{E}/ω_n versus E plane; see Fig. 4. The numerator of the general form is set equal to zero and the resulting equation is plotted on the phase plane.

$$E = -2\zeta \frac{\dot{E}}{\omega_n} \quad (15)$$

To determine the slope of the phase trajectory at any point P , a horizontal line is drawn from P to this curve thus locating Q at the intersection. A vertical line projected to the E -axis determines the point T . The slope of the phase trajectory at the point P is perpendicular to the line TP . It will be observed that the curve obtained by setting the numerator of equation 14 equal to zero is simply the $N = 0$ isocline of equation 12. In Fig. 4 are plotted two $N = 0$ isoclines: the first is for the actual physical system where ζ is a function of V_c which in turn varies directly as E and the second is for a constant ζ of 0.185 which is the approximate value of ζ at small values of V_c . The stabilizing effect of the variable ζ becomes apparent from Lienard's construction as seen from the two possible slope lines of the phase trajectory at point P . The slope obtained for the variable ζ isocline is not as steep as that for the constant ζ isocline and as a result the phase trajectory of the actual physical system will tend to home into the origin faster than if the ζ remained constant.

It will be noted that the entire phase trajectory can be constructed using Lienard's construction. This method will not, however, be as accurate as that obtained by the isocline method. It must be realized that the Lienard construction line used to draw the phase trajectory in the I and III quadrants of the phase plane are straight lines as the value of ζ remains constant within these quadrants.

Compensation by Tachometer Feedback

Servomechanisms are quite often compensated by means of tachometer feedback as shown in Fig. 5. For the tachometer compensated system equations 2, 3, 4, and 5 are still valid. The control winding voltage is then changed to

$$V_c = K_A K_D E - K_t \dot{\theta} \quad (16)$$

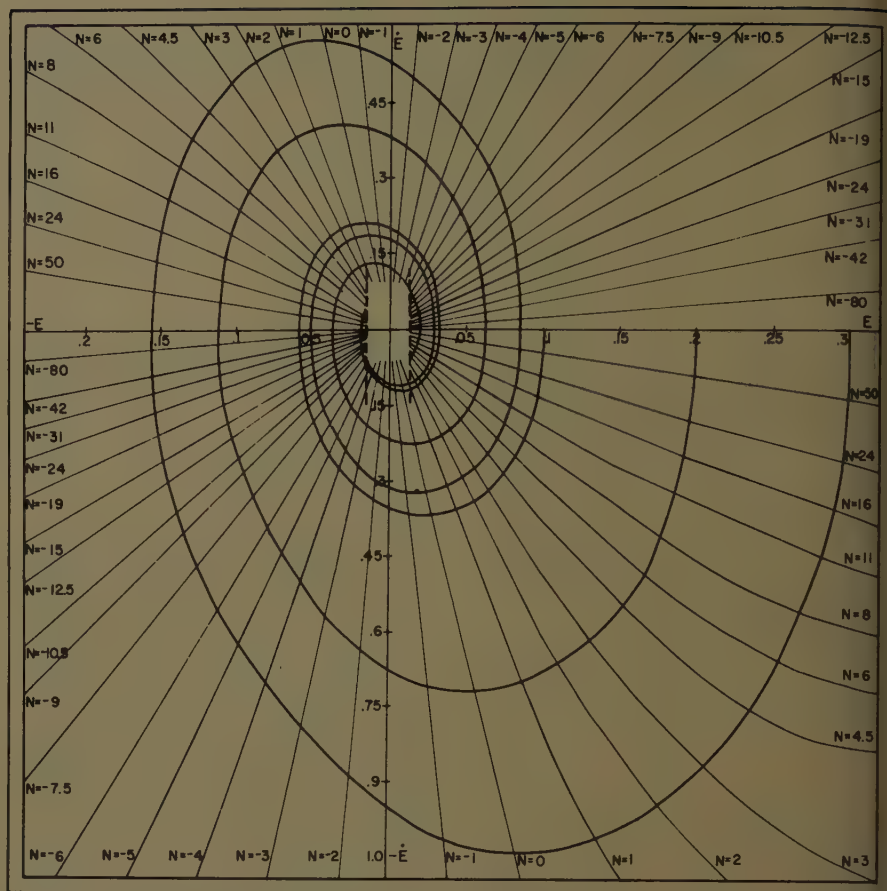


Fig. 8. Normalized phase-plane trajectories for step inputs of 0.1, 0.2, and 0.3 radian

The tachometer feedback system which is still a 2nd order system can be analyzed by the phase-plane method, the equation of the isoclines being of the same form as equation 12.

$$\dot{E} = \frac{-\omega_n^2 E}{N + 2\zeta \omega_n} \quad (12)$$

The tachometer feedback has no effect on the natural frequency and equation 1 still holds. The damping ratio ζ is, however, affected and becomes

$$\zeta = 1/2 \sqrt{\frac{n}{AK_D K_A J}} \left(F + \left| \frac{\partial T}{\partial \omega} \right| + AK_t \right) \quad (17)$$

Thus the damping ratio of the compensated system can be increased by adding tachometer feedback. The analysis of the tachometer compensated system proceeds in similar fashion as that of the simple system. The effect of combining the AK_t with the nonlinear $\partial T/\partial \omega$ is to decrease the influence of the motor and more nearly linearize the system.

Conclusion

In conclusion it is observed that the nonlinearity of the 2-phase motor influences the transient response of a simple servomechanism changing the per-cent

overshoot, frequency of oscillation and number of oscillations before coming into correspondence. The phase-plane analysis of this paper is extremely useful in giving one a better insight into this unusual behavior.

Appendix I

Construction of Isoclines

In Fig. 6 the phase-plane axes are shown and the quadrants are numbered I through IV. In this figure the $+\dot{E}$ axis is labeled $-\dot{\theta}$ and the $-\dot{E}$ axis is labeled $+\dot{\theta}$. This can be best reasoned through as follows:

$$E \Leftarrow K_R (R - C) \Leftarrow K_D \left(R - \frac{\theta}{n} \right) \quad (18)$$

Since for a step input, R is a constant \dot{E} is proportional to $-\dot{\theta}$, the speed of the motor in the opposite direction from the positive applied torque. The torque in the simple servo system of Fig. 1 is proportional to the error signal and the horizontal axes can be labeled $+T$ and $-T$.

As seen in Fig. 6 the speed and torque in quadrants II and IV of the phase plane

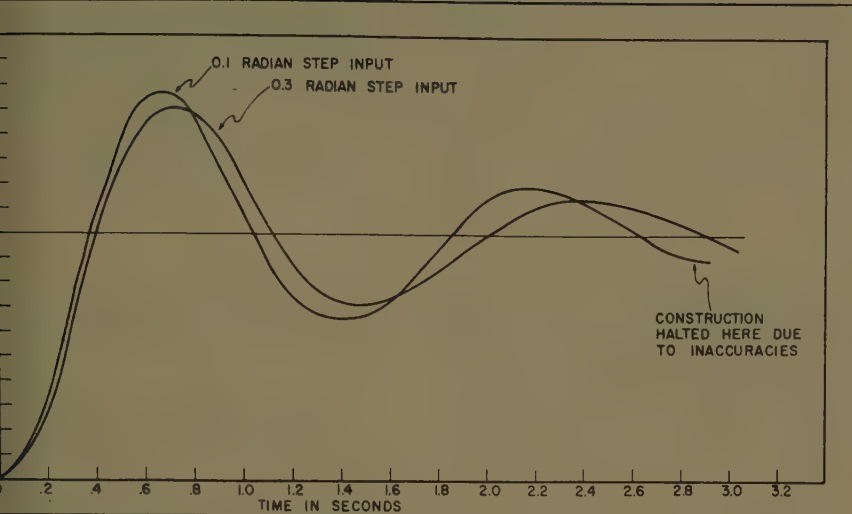


Fig. 9. Transient responses for step function inputs of 0.1 and 0.3 radian

of the same algebraic sign and the $\partial T/\partial \omega$ obtained from the first quadrant the speed-torque curve must be used. In quadrants I and III the speed and torque have algebraic signs and the constant value of $\partial T/\partial \omega$ determined from the fourth quadrant of the speed-torque curve must be used.

Fig. 7 shows the transient response to a step input with the regions of positive and negative torque, and positive and negative speed indicated.

Phase Trajectories and Transient Response

To check the validity of this analysis a 10-watt motor was built into a servomechanism whose parameters were

(amplifier gain) = 25 volts/volt
(error detector gain) = 18 volts/radian
(gear ratio) = 500
(motor torque constant) = 0.0413 ounce-inch/volt
(total inertia) = 0.60 ounce-inch²

The natural frequency of this system was calculated to be 4.9 radians per second. Fig. 8 is a small reproduction of the original phase plane, with many of the iso-

clines omitted in order not to obscure the drawing. The method employed in constructing the phase trajectories on the isoclines is presented in Appendix II. Phase trajectories for step inputs of 0.1, 0.2 and 0.3 radian are shown in Fig. 8. By numerical methods⁶ the transient responses of two of these phase trajectories are calculated and plotted in normalized form in Fig. 9.

The parameters of this system were purposely chosen to produce a small ζ in the working voltage range as illustrated in Fig. 3. As a result this system is probably more lively than a properly designed system should be. The theory holds regardless of the relative damping of the servo and since a lively servo more effectively emphasizes the results of a variable ζ , it was chosen for this example.

There is an operating threshold of about 7 volts on the 2-phase motor; that is, if the control field voltage drops below 7 volts, the motor does not develop sufficient torque to keep it running. This 7 volts is equivalent to about 0.015 radian of error and is drawn in as two vertical lines in Fig. 8.

The usual transient behavior of this

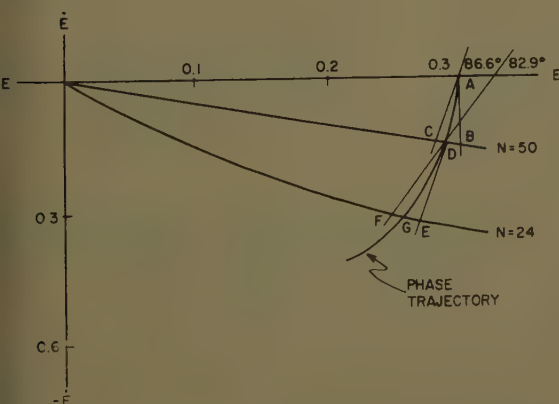


Fig. 10. Method used in constructing phase trajectories

simple system is immediately observed.

1. The percentage overshoot is greater for the small step inputs
2. When there is a small step input the system is faster with higher frequencies of oscillation
3. The frequency of oscillations in a transient response becomes greater as time increases. Since the error signal decreases as correspondence is approached, the damping ratio ζ is decreased; and the frequency of oscillation

$$\omega = \omega_n \sqrt{1 - \zeta^2}$$

over part of the cycle becomes larger. During the other portion of the cycle ζ does not vary; hence, ω also remains invariant

Lienard's Construction

Another very effective method of showing the influence of the ζ varying with the magnitude of the control field voltage V_c is Lienard's construction. In order to employ this method the differential equation describing the physical system must be capable of being converted into a general form.

Appendix II

Construction of Phase Trajectories

The phase trajectory was constructed with respect to the isoclines by one of the accepted methods; however, to make this article more complete it will be briefly outlined in this appendix. For a step input of 0.3 radian, the phase trajectory starts at point A on the positive E axis at 0.3 radian. From point A of Fig. 10, two lines are constructed; one a vertical line and the other making an angle of 86.6 degrees with the positive E axis, since $\tan^{-1} 50/3 = \tan^{-1} 16.7 = 86.6^\circ$. The 50 is the value of N assigned to the next isocline and the 3 is the scale ratio. Point D is then located midway between points B and C. From points D are constructed two lines making angles of 86.6° and 82.9° with the positive E axis. The point G is then located on the N=24 isocline midway between points E and F. The initial part of the phase trajectory is then drawn in with a French curve between the points A, D, and G.

References

1. EVALUATING THE EFFECT OF NONLINEARITY IN A 2-PHASE SERVOMOTOR, W. A. Stein, G. J. Thaler. *AIEE Transactions*, pt. II (*Applications and Industry*), vol. 73, 1954 (Jan. 1955 section), pp. 518-21.
2. A SPECIAL DYNAMOMETER FOR TESTING SMALL MOTORS, S. H. Van Wambeek, W. A. Stein.

H. Chestnut (General Electric Company, Schenectady, N. Y.): Mr. W. A. Stein in this paper has served to bring out a number of important points in connection with servosystems. First, that many simple control systems are not really linear and that the phase-plane method provides a useful tool to obtain a more exact solution for such problems. Second, the response obtained for some such nonlinear systems with different input amplitudes, as for example Fig. 5, may not differ too significantly in

G. J. Thaler: I wish to thank Mr. Chestnut for emphasizing those points which are of particular interest to the design engineer. It is important that the engineer should realize that many control systems are not

It is also important to understand the mechanism and effects of the nonlinearities in as much detail as possible, since such understanding leads to the logical use of engineering judgment in design. I feel sure Dr. Stein wished to point out that the use of phase-plane analysis, where applicable, leads to such understanding, and as a result he shows that the nonlinear effects of the 2-phase motor are readily swamped out by addition of linear tachometer feedback.

Synopsis: This paper presents the theory and procedure for designing sampled-data control systems of the rippleless type having a digital processing unit in the forward line and another digital processing unit in the feedback loop to respond optimally to inputs as well as to neutralize the disturbance. Two examples using the proposed design procedure are given, and their root loci are plotted and discussed.

RECENT LITERATURE has been concerned with the theory and the design procedure for sampled-data control systems utilizing a digital processing unit in the forward line to achieve the desired input-output performance.¹⁻⁸ The effect of disturbances for systems having unity

Paper 60-867, recommended by the AIEE Feedback Control Systems Committee and approved by the AIEE Technical Operations Department for presentation at the AIEE Summer General Meeting, Atlantic City, N. J., June 19-24, 1960. Manuscript submitted November 1, 1959; made available for printing June 1, 1960.

J. C. HUNG is with the Department of Electrical Engineering, New York University, New York, N. Y.

The author wishes to express his gratitude to Dean J. R. Ragazzini and Professor S. S. L. Chang of New York University for their devoted guidance and reviewing of the manuscript. This research was supported by the United States Air Force under Contract AF 49(638)-586 monitored by the Office of Scientific Research, Air Research and Development Command, Washington 25, D. C.

feedback has also been mentioned.³ Nevertheless, so far as extant literature is concerned, little has been mentioned of systems having two digital processing units, one in the forward line and the other in the feedback loop, to achieve both a deadbeat input-output function and the neutralization of disturbances.

It will be shown that by using two digital processing units the input-output function and the disturbance-output function can be implemented independently. The design criterion for the disturbance-output function is that the effect of the disturbance upon the output subsides to zero completely, either at the sampling instants only, or ripple-free, depending on the designer's specification, in the least number of sampling periods. The required mathematical form for the input-output transfer function has been dis-

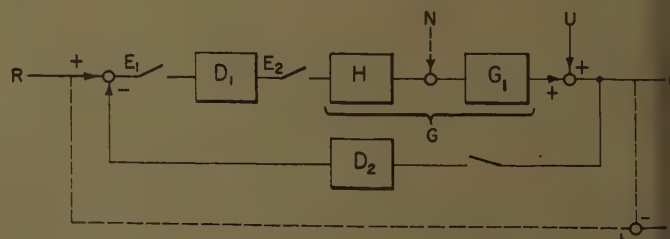


Fig. 1. Sampled-data system with two digital processing units

cussed by Bergen and Ragazzini, and will be included for completeness.² The technique described can be used for regular design. In the following the inputs and disturbances are assumed to be describable as finite powers of l .

Referring to Fig. 1, the notation used in this paper is as follows:

$C(z)$ = pulsed system output in response to input signal

$R(z)$ = pulsed input function

$$K(z) = \frac{\text{pulsed input-output function}}{R(z)} = \frac{C(z)}{R(z)}$$

$C'(z)$ = pulsed system output in response to disturbance

$$U(z) = \text{pulsed disturbance function}$$
$$J(z) = \text{pulsed disturbance-output function} = C'(z)/U(z)$$

$G_1(s)$ = Laplace transform of plant transfer function

 $H(s)$ = Laplace transform of hold circuit

$G(z)$ = pulsed transfer function of plant-hol
combination = $G_1 H(z)$

$D_1(z)$, $D_2(z)$ = pulsed transfer functions of digital processing units

$E(z)$ = pulsed error function in response to
input function = $R(z) - C(z)$

$E_1(z)$ = pulsed input of $D_1(z)$ in response to input signal

$E_1'(z)$ = pulsed input of $D_1(z)$ in response to disturbance

$E_2(z)$ = pulsed commanding signal in response to input signal

$E_2'(z)$ = pulsed commanding signal in response to disturbance

Referring to Fig. 1, the basic relations between the variables and the components readily shown to be as follows:

$$\frac{C(z)}{R(z)} = \frac{D_1(z)G(z)}{1 + D_1(z)D_2(z)G(z)} \quad (1)$$

$$\frac{C'(z)}{U(z)} = \frac{1}{1 + D_1(z)D_2(z)G(z)} = 1 - D_2(z)K(z) = \frac{K(z)}{D_1(z)G(z)} \quad (2)$$

$$\frac{R(z) - C(z)}{R(z)} = 1 - K(z) \quad (3)$$

$$\frac{K(z)}{D_1(z)G(z)} = \frac{1}{1 + D_1(z)D_2(z)G(z)} = J(z) \quad (4)$$

$$\frac{K(z)}{G(z)} = \frac{D_1(z)}{1 + D_1(z)D_2(z)G(z)} \quad (5)$$

$$\frac{D_2(z)}{1 + D_1(z)D_2(z)G(z)} = J(z)D_2(z) \quad (6)$$

$$\frac{D_1(z)D_2(z)}{1 + D_1(z)D_2(z)G(z)} = \frac{K(z)D_2(z)}{G(z)} \quad (7)$$

$$\frac{K(z)}{J(z)G(z)} \quad (8)$$

$$\frac{1 - J(z)}{K(z)} \quad (9)$$

$$= NG_1(z) \quad (10)$$

Restrictions on Mathematical Forms

The mathematical form of the plant-transfer function is

$$\frac{z^{-m}(p_0 + p_1z^{-1} + \dots + p_nz^{-n})}{q_0 + q_1z^{-1} + \dots + q_nz^{-n}} \quad (11)$$

where the factor z^{-m} represents the plant transfer lag. The constant q_0 assures that the output of the plant does not depend on the future of the input.

The restrictions on the pulsed input-output function $K(z)$ are mentioned later.² First, $K(z)$ must contain in its numerator the plant transfer lag factor z^{-m} . Second, $K(z)$ must contain as its zeros all the zeros of $G(z)$ which are outside or on the unit-circle of z -plane. Third, for a system having no steady-state input-output error during the sampling instants in response to an input function

$$\frac{A(z)}{(1 - z^{-1})^m} \quad (12)$$

where $A(z)$ does not contain $(1 - z^{-1})$ as a factor, the error function, equation 3, must have the factor $(1 - z^{-1})^m$ as its zero so as to cancel the same factor in the denominator of $R(z)$, that is

$$\frac{R(z)}{R(z)} = 1 - K(z) = (1 - z^{-1})^m F(z) \quad (13)$$

Equation 13 is equivalent to the following m conditions

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{z \rightarrow 1} K(z) &= 1 \\ \lim_{z \rightarrow 1} K'(z) &= 0 \\ &\vdots \\ \lim_{z \rightarrow 1} K^{(m-1)}(z) &= 0 \end{aligned} \quad (14)$$

where all the derivatives are taken with respect to z^{-1} . These m equations can be solved for m constants resulting in a $K(z)$ for minimal prototype response. If the criterion other than the shortest settling time is desired more than m constants should be determined.

The disturbance may be expressed in the form

$$U(z) = \frac{B(z)}{(1 - z^{-1})^n} \quad (15)$$

where $B(z)$ has no $(1 - z^{-1})$ factors. Equation 15 includes deterministic type of disturbances describable as finite powers of t . This form of disturbance is a practical and reasonable one. In the case of regulator design, it includes the practical cases such as leakage of flow control, load change of speed control, and shift of static characteristic of the plant.

The first restriction on the pulsed disturbance-output function $J(z)$ comes from the criterion that the disturbance must be neutralized.

In order to have zero steady-state disturbance effect at the sampling instants, the disturbance-output function, equation 2, must contain as its zero the factor $(1 - z^{-1})^n$. That is

$$J(z) = \frac{C'(z)}{U(z)} = 1 - D_2(z)K(z) = (1 - z^{-1})^n V(z) \quad (16)$$

Equation 15 is equivalent to the following n conditions:

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{z \rightarrow 1} J(z) &= 0 \\ \lim_{z \rightarrow 1} J'(z) &= 0 \\ &\vdots \\ \lim_{z \rightarrow 1} J^{(n-1)}(z) &= 0 \end{aligned} \quad (17)$$

where all derivatives are taken with respect to z^{-1} . These n equations can be solved for n constants, resulting in a $J(z)$, which gives a fastest subsidence of disturbance effect. The second restriction on $J(z)$ can be seen readily from equation 8, which can be written in the form

$$J(z) = \frac{K(z)}{D_1(z)G(z)} \quad (18)$$

In order to avoid the pole-zero cancellation outsider or on the unit-circle, $J(z)$

must contain as its zeros all the unstable poles of $G(z)$.

It is of interest to note that Bertram's condition that $1 - K(z)$ must contain as its zeros all the undesirable poles of $G(z)$ can be removed by using a digital unit in the feedback loop.⁷ The latter method has the advantage that the polynomial $K(z)$ can be made shorter giving a shorter settling time.

The procedure is as follows: After $K(z)$ is obtained by the method indicated in equation 14, obtain $D_2(z)$ from the equation

$$1 - D_2(z)K(z) = Q(z)$$

where $Q(z)$ is a finite polynomial containing all the undesirable poles of $G(z)$; and obtain $D_1(z)$ from the equation

$$D_1(z) = \frac{K(z)}{G(z)[1 - D_2(z)K(z)]}$$

Additional Restrictions on Ripple-free Systems

The additional requirement for implementing a ripple-free input-output function is that quantity E_2 be the quotient of a finite polynomial in z^{-1} and the factor $(1 - z^{-1})^q$, where $q \leq h + 1$, and h is the order of hold. This means that first, the function $K(z)$ must contain as its zeros, all the zeros of $G(z)$; and second, the pole order m of $R(z)$, as defined in equation 12, cannot be greater than the number of integrations in the plant $G_1(s)$ by more than $h + 1$. The latter is because of the fact that an h th order hold cannot produce a smooth output if the input is of order greater than $h + 1$. If the number of plant integrations is less than $m - (h + 1)$ then additional integrations must be inserted between the hold and the plant.

A similar requirement exists for implementing a ripple-free disturbance-output function. Since $J(z)$ is designed to be a finite polynomial in z^{-1} , which, from quantity E_2 , requires that $K(z)D_2(z)$ also be a finite polynomial. To insure that the system is ripple-free, the additional requirement is that $E'(z)/U(z)$ be the quotient of a finite polynomial and the factor $(1 - z^{-1})^p$, where $p \leq h + 1$, and h is the order of hold. This condition is satisfied when, from equation 7, $K(z)$ contains as its zeros all the zeros of $G(z)$; and when the pole order n of $U(z)$, as defined in equation 15, is not greater than the number of plant integration by more than $h + 1$.

The system is ripple-free for both input-output and disturbance-output functions if it is ripple-free for either one having a higher pole order.

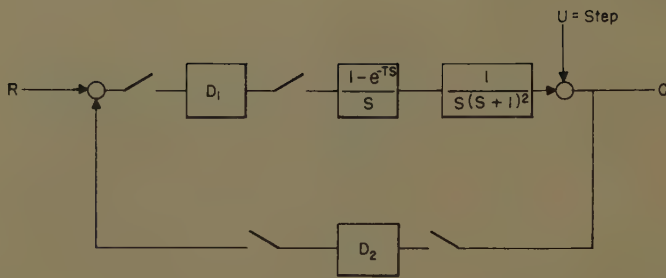


Fig. 2. Sampled-data system for example I

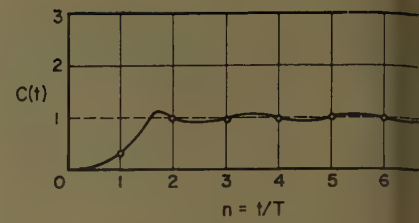


Fig. 3. Output of example I-A in response to unit step input

Design Procedure

The desired performance includes: first that the disturbance effect dies off rapidly, and second, that the input-output performance has a zero steady-state error. The design procedure is as follows:

Find the function $K(z)$ satisfying the aforementioned requirements for the desired input-output performance.² Thus

$$K(z) = z^{-m} W(z) M(z) \quad (19)$$

where $W(z)$ contains all the zeros outside of the unit-circle of $G(z)$, and $M(z)$ has no zeros outside of the unit-circle.

To have the fast subsidence of disturbance effect at the sampling instants it is desired that $J(z)$ be as short a polynomial in z^{-1} as possible.

$$J(z) = 1 - D_2(z)K(z) \quad (2)$$

The shortest $J(z)$ is obtained by letting $D_2(z)$ contain as its denominator for factor $M(z)$, that is,

$$D_2(z) = \frac{b_0 + b_1 z^{-1} + \dots + b_{n-1} z^{-n-1}}{M(z)} \quad (20)$$

where all the b 's will be determined later. Equation 2 then becomes

$$\begin{aligned} J(z) &= 1 - \frac{b_0 + b_1 z^{-1} + \dots + b_{n-1} z^{-n-1}}{M(z)} \times \\ &\quad \frac{z^{-m} W(z) M(z)}{z^{-m} W(z) M(z)} \\ &= 1 - (b_0 + b_1 z^{-1} + \dots + b_{n-1} z^{-n-1}) \frac{1}{z^{-m} W(z)} \end{aligned} \quad (21)$$

As mentioned before, $J(z)$ must satisfy the n conditions formulated in equation 16. These n conditions determine the n constants b_0, b_1, \dots , and b_{n-1} .

If a ripple-free performance is desired the conditions stated in the previous paragraph must be included.

If the staleness factor is used in $K(z)$ it must be contained as a zero in $D_2(z)$.

That is, if

$$K(z) = \frac{z^{-m} W(z) M(z)}{(1 - Cz^{-1})^q} \quad (22)$$

where $(1 - Cz^{-1})^q$ is the staleness factor, then

$$\begin{aligned} D_2(z) &= \frac{(b_0 + b_1 z^{-1} + \dots + b_{n-1} z^{-n-1})(1 - Cz^{-1})^q}{M(z)} \end{aligned} \quad (23)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} J(z) &= 1 - D_2(z)K(z) \\ &= 1 - (b_0 + b_1 z^{-1} + \dots + b_{n-1} z^{-n-1}) z^{-m} W(z) \end{aligned} \quad (24)$$

Equation 24 is the same as equation 21 but the two digital processing units $D_2(z)$ are different.

Obtain the digital processing unit pulsed transfer function $D_1(z)$ from the equation

$$D_1(z) = \frac{K(z)}{J(z)G(z)} \quad (8)$$

It is worth noting that the disturbance function $U(z)$ used throughout the previous discussion is for the disturbance affecting the system at the output point as shown in Fig. 1. If the disturbance is applied at another point of the system, however, the design procedure is the same, provided that a modified disturbance function is used. For example, a disturbance $N(s)$ may appear between the hold and the plant Fig. 1. This disturbance can be represented by an equivalent disturbance at the output as

$$U(s) = N(s)G_1(s) \quad (25)$$

resulting in a pulsed disturbance function

$$U(z) = NG_1(z) \quad (26)$$

An example will be given to illustrate this aspect.

The equations 19, 21, 22, and 24 show that $K(z)$ and $J(z)$ can be implemented independently, but both of them are restricted by the nature of the plant.

Example I

In Fig. 2, $D_1(z)$ and $D_2(z)$ are to be determined to give a performance having zero steady-state input-output error and zero steady-state disturbance effect at the sampling instants. The disturbance is assumed to be a unit step. Using pulsed functions, one has

$$G(z) = \frac{z^{-1}(1 + 2.34z^{-1})(1 + 0.16z^{-1})}{(1 - z^{-1})(1 - 0.368z^{-1})^2}$$

$$U(z) = \frac{1}{1 - z^{-1}}$$

CASE A

If the input signal is also a unit step, then

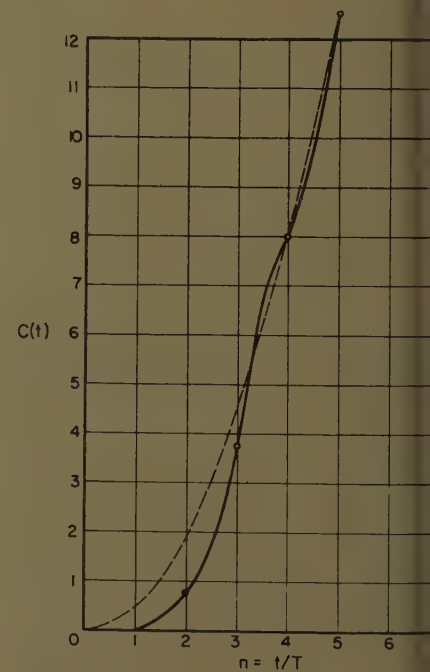


Fig. 5. Output of example I-C in response to constant acceleration input

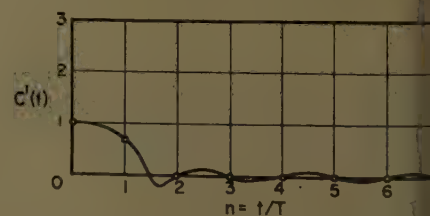


Fig. 6. Output of example I-A, B, and C response to step-type disturbance $u(t)$

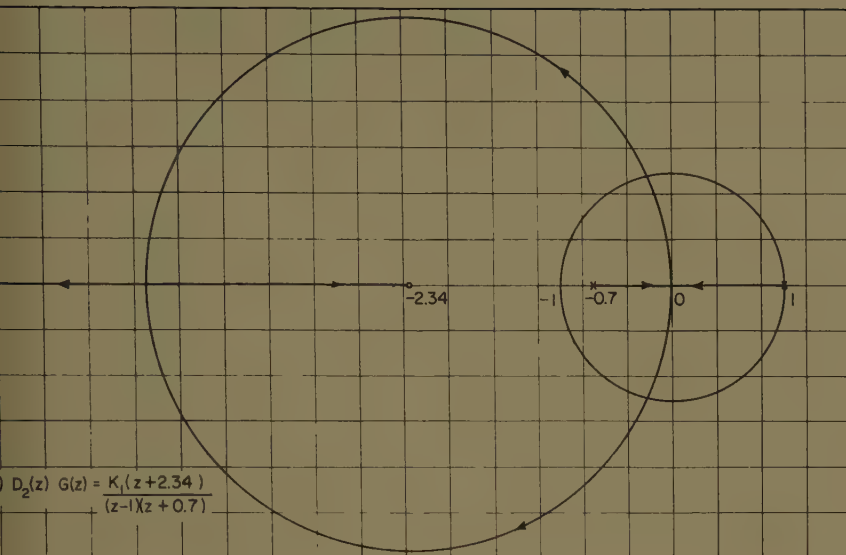


Fig. 7. Root-locus plot for example 1

$$D_2(z) = \frac{1}{1-z^{-1}}$$

find $K(z)$, let

$$K(z) = z^{-1}(1+2.34z^{-1})a_0$$

Applying the condition $K(1)=1$, gives $a_0=0.3$, so

$$K(z) = 0.3z^{-1}(1+2.34z^{-1})$$

$$D_1(z) = \frac{b_0}{0.3}$$

$$D_1(z) = b_0z^{-1}(1+2.34z^{-1})$$

Applying the condition $J(1)=0$, gives $b_0=0.3$, so that

$$D_1(z) = (1-z^{-1})(1+0.7z^{-1})$$

The digital units are

$$D_1(z) = 1$$

$$D_2(z) = \frac{0.3(1-0.368z^{-1})^2}{(1+0.7z^{-1})(1+0.16z^{-1})}$$

The respective output response of the input signal and the disturbance are

$$C(z) = 0.3z^{-1} + z^{-2} + z^{-3} + \dots$$

$$C'(z) = 1 + 0.7z^{-1}$$

CASE B

If the input signal is a unit ramp, then

$$R(z) = \frac{z^{-1}}{(1-z^{-1})^2}$$

find $K(z)$, let

$$K(z) = z^{-1}(1+2.34z^{-1})(a_0+a_1z^{-1})$$

Applying the conditions $K(1)=1$, and

$K'(1)=0$, gives $a_0=0.805$, and $a_1=-0.506$, and gives

$$K(z) = z^{-1}(1+2.34z^{-1})(0.805-0.506z^{-1})$$

Let

$$D_2(z) = \frac{b_0}{0.805-0.506z^{-1}}$$

then

$$J(z) = 1 - b_0z^{-1}(1+2.34z^{-1})$$

Applying the condition $J(1)=0$, gives again $b_0=0.3$, and again gives

$$J(z) = (1-z^{-1})(1+0.7z^{-1})$$

The two digital processing units are

$$D_2(z) = \frac{0.372}{1-0.629z^{-1}}$$

$$D_1(z) = \frac{0.805(1-0.629z^{-1})(1-0.368z^{-1})^2}{(1+0.7z^{-1})(1+0.16z^{-1})}$$

The respective output responses of the input signal and disturbance are

$$C(z) = 0.805z^{-2} + 3z^{-3} + 4z^{-4} + \dots$$

$$C'(z) = 1 + 0.7z^{-1}$$

CASE C

If the input signal is of the constant acceleration type, then

$$R(z) = \frac{z^{-1}(1+z^{-1})}{2(1-z^{-1})^3}$$

Following the same procedure,

$$K(z) = 1.47z^{-1}(1+2.34z^{-1}) \times (1-1.24z^{-1}+0.477z^{-2})$$

$$J(z) = (1-z^{-1})(1+0.7z^{-1})$$

$$D_2(z) = \frac{0.204}{1-1.24z^{-1}+0.477z^{-2}}$$

$$D_1(z) = \frac{1.47(1-1.24z^{-1}+0.477z^{-2})(1-0.368z^{-1})^2}{(1+0.7z^{-1})(1+0.16z^{-1})}$$

$$C(z) = 0.735z^{-2} + 3.746z^{-3} + 8z^{-4} + 12.5z^{-5} + \dots$$

$$C'(z) = 1 + 0.7z^{-1}$$

The responses for these systems are shown in Figs. 3, 4, 5, and 6. It can be seen that the three input-output functions obtained are exactly the same as those obtained for unity feedback systems using Bergen and Ragazzini's procedure.² Since the disturbances for the three systems are the same, the same $J(z)$ function was obtained. This shows the independence of implementing the $K(z)$ and $J(z)$ functions. It is also interesting to note that if the input signal and the disturbance are of the same order, then $D_2(z)$ results in unity, a unity feedback system!

It is of interest to note that

$$K(z) = \frac{1}{D_2(z)} \frac{D_1(z)D_2(z)G(z)}{1+D_1(z)D_2(z)G(z)}$$

and that, in this example, the poles of $K(z)$ are the zeros of $D_2(z)$, which are fixed and the zeros of $1+D_1(z)D_2(z)G(z)$ which are given by the root locus of $1+D_1(z)D_2(z)G(z)$ shown in Fig. 7. The root loci of all these systems are identical but the zeros of $D_2(z)$ are all at the origin of the z -plane and differ in number, there being none for case A, one for case B, and two for case C. In all cases the two roots contributed by $1+D_1(z)D_2(z)G(z)$ are at the origin.

It is further observed that the pole-zero cancellations effected in the open loop cancelled transfer functions differ. They are as follows:

- Step input system
 $z=0.368, 0.368, -0.16$
- Ramp input system
 $z=0.368, 0.368, -0.16, 0.629$

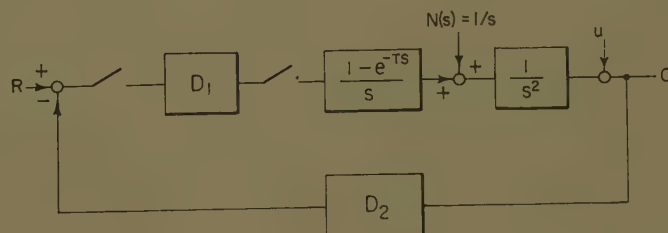


Fig. 8. Sample-data system for example 1

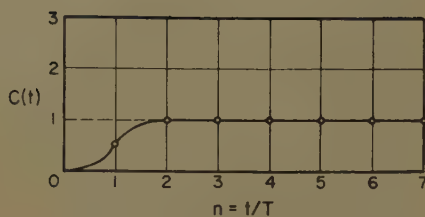


Fig. 9. Output of example II-A in response to unit step input

C. Constant acceleration input system
 $z=0.368, 0.368, -0.16, 0.62 \pm j0.304$

Example II

The system shown in Fig. 8 is to be implemented to give a ripple-free input-output performance and a ripple-free neutralization of disturbance effect. The disturbance is of the step type, which appears at the point between the hold and the plant. The Laplace transform of the disturbance function is

$$N(s) = \frac{1}{s}$$

The equivalent disturbance at the output end is

$$U(s) = N(s)G_1(s) = \frac{1}{s^3}$$

whose pulsed function is

$$U(z) = \frac{z^{-1}(1+z^{-1})}{2(1-z^{-1})^3}$$

The pulsed plant-hold transfer function is

$$G(z) = \frac{z^{-1}(1+z^{-1})}{2(1-z^{-1})^2}$$

CASE A

If the input is a unit step, then

$$R(z) = \frac{1}{1-z^{-1}}$$

Let

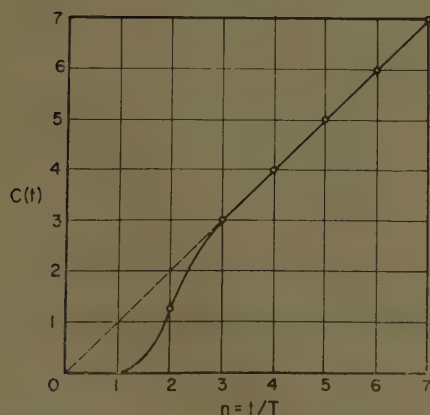


Fig. 10. Output of example II-B in response to unit ramp input

$$K(z) = z^{-1}(1+z^{-1})a_0$$

Applying the condition $K(1)=1$, gives $a_0=0.5$, so that

$$K(z) = 0.5z^{-1}(1+z^{-1})$$

Let

$$D_2(z) = \frac{b_0 + b_1z^{-1} + b_2z^{-2}}{0.5}$$

then

$$J(z) = 1 - (b_0 + b_1z^{-1} + b_2z^{-2})z(1+z^{-1})$$

Applying the conditions $J(1)=0$, $J'(1)=0$ and $J''(1)=0$, gives $b_0=2.125$, $b_1=-2.5$, and $b_2=0.875$, therefore

$$J(z) = (1-z^{-1})^3(1+0.875z^{-1})$$

The digital processing units are

$$D_2(z) = 4.25 - 5z^{-1} + 1.75z^{-2}$$

$$D_1(z) = \frac{1}{(1-z^{-1})(1+0.875z^{-1})}$$

The respective output responses of the input signal and the disturbance are

$$C(z) = 0.5z^{-1} + z^{-2} + z^{-3} + \dots$$

$$C'(z) = z^{-1} + 1.875z^{-2} + 0.875z^{-3}$$

CASE B

If the input is a unit ramp, then

$$R(z) = \frac{z^{-1}}{(1-z^{-1})^2}$$

Let

$$K(z) = z^{-1}(1+z^{-1})(a_0 + a_1z^{-1})$$

Applying the condition $K(1)=1$, and $K'(1)=0$, gives $a_0=1.25$, and $a_1=-0.75$, therefore

$$K(z) = z^{-1}(1+z^{-1})(1.25 - 0.75z^{-1})$$

Let

$$D_2(z) = \frac{b_0 + b_1z^{-1} + b_2z^{-2}}{1.25 - 0.75z^{-1}}$$

then

$$J(z) = 1 - (b_0 + b_1z^{-1} + b_2z^{-2})z^{-1}(1+z^{-1})$$

Applying the conditions required for $J(z)$ gives the same constants as before, thus

$$J(z) = (1-z^{-1})^3(1+0.875z^{-1})$$

The two digital units are

$$D_2(z) = \frac{1.7 - 2z^{-1} + 0.7z^{-2}}{1 - 0.6z^{-1}}$$

$$D_1(z) = \frac{2.5(1 - 0.6z^{-1})}{(1-z^{-1})(1+0.875z^{-1})}$$

The respective output responses of the input signal and the disturbance are

$$C(z) = 1.25z^{-2} + 3z^{-3} + 4z^{-4} + \dots$$

$$C'(z) = z^{-1} + 1.875z^{-2} + 0.875z^{-3}$$

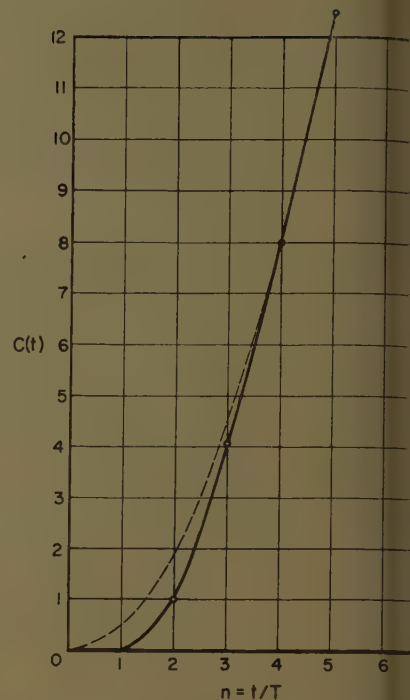


Fig. 11. Output of example II-C in response to constant acceleration input

CASE C

If the input is constant acceleration, then

$$R(z) = \frac{z^{-1}(1+z^{-1})}{2(1-z^{-1})^3}$$

Following the same procedure,

$$K(z) = 2.125z^{-1}(1+z^{-1})(1 - 1.18z^{-1} + 0.411z^{-2})$$

$$J(z) = (1-z^{-1})^3(1+0.875z^{-1})$$

$$D_2(z) = 1$$

$$D_1(z) = \frac{4.25(1 - 1.18z^{-1} + 0.411z^{-2})}{(1-z^{-1})(1+0.875z^{-1})}$$

$$C(z) = 1.0625z^{-2} + 4.0625z^{-3} + 8z^{-4} + 12.5z^{-5} + \dots$$

$$C'(z) = z^{-1} + 1.875z^{-2} + 0.875z^{-3}$$

The responses are shown in Figs. 9, 11, and 12. And the root loci of the three systems, which are the same, plotted as shown in Fig. 13. It is interesting to note that all the root loci through the $z=0$ point. The number poles of $K(z)$ at the origin differs for t

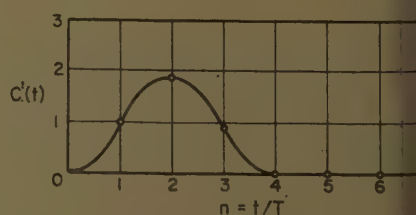
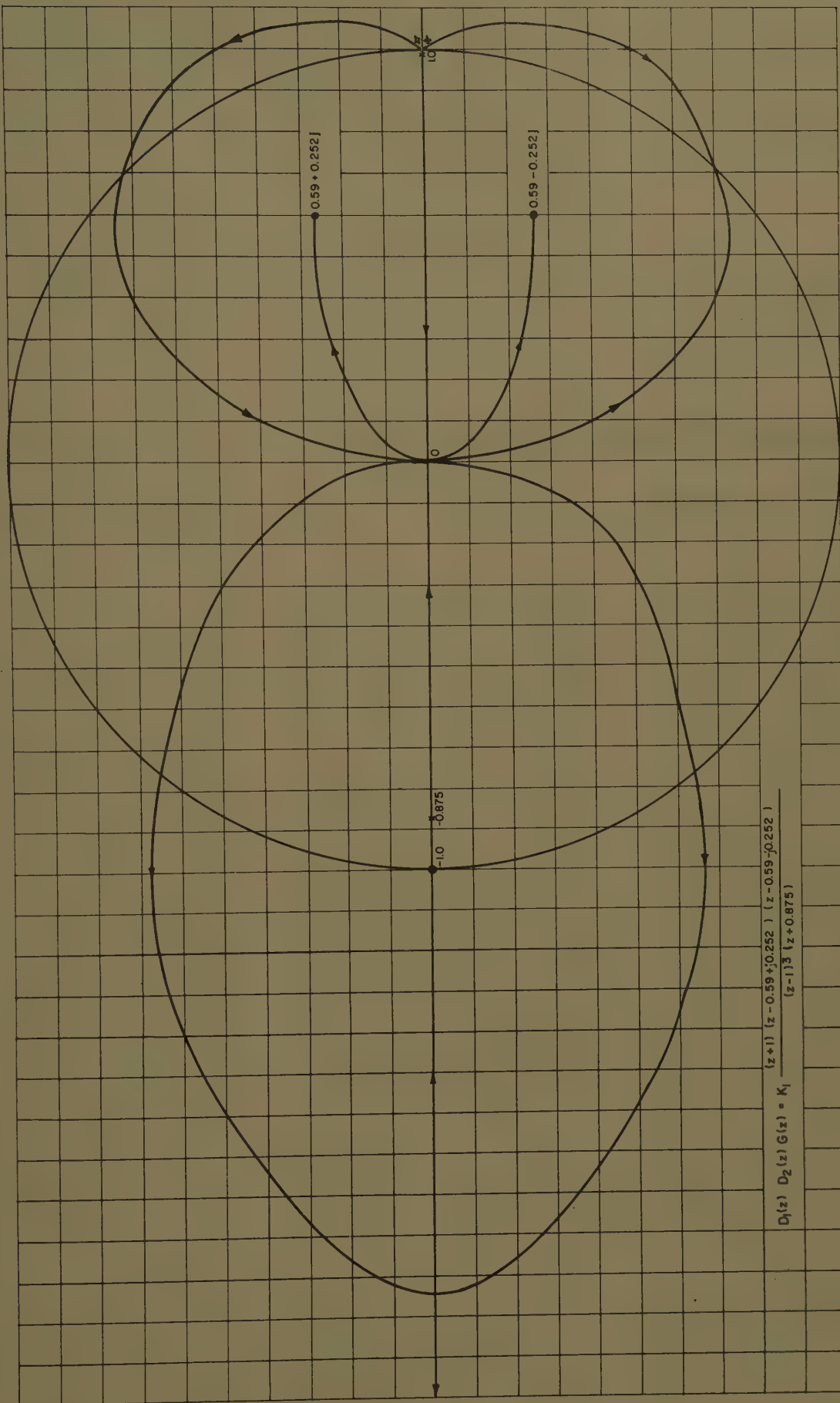


Fig. 12. Output of example II-A, B, and C in response to step type disturbance $n(t)$



$$D(z) D_2(z) G(z) = K_1 \frac{(z+1)(z-0.59+j0.252)(z-0.59-j0.252)}{(z-1)^3(z+0.875)}$$

Fig. 13. Root-locus plot for example II

three cases, there being two for case A, three for case B, and four for case C. This is caused by there being two, one, and no poles of $D_2(z)$ respectively at the origin. In terms of root loci, one may say that a deadbeat system is the one which is so implemented such that its root loci are forced to pass through the origin, and its operating point is chosen at the origin.

Conclusion

The procedure of implementing two digital processing units to neutralize the effect of simple disturbance of a deadbeat

system has been presented. By simple disturbance is meant a disturbance of step, ramp, or constant acceleration type. The neutralization can be realized for disturbances affecting the system any place except the input point. A ripple-free system for both input-output and disturbance-output performance can be obtained simultaneously.

References

1. THE ANALYSIS OF SAMPLED-DATA SYSTEM, J. R. Ragazzini, L. A. Zadeh. *AIEE Transactions*, pt. II (*Applications and Industry*), vol. 71, Nov. 1952, pp. 225-34.
2. SAMPLED-DATA PROCESSING TECHNIQUES FOR FEEDBACK CONTROL SYSTEMS, A. R. Bergen, J.

- R. Ragazzini. *Ibid.*, vol. 73, Nov. 1954, pp. 47.
3. SAMPLED-DATA CONTROL SYSTEMS (book), J. R. Ragazzini, G. F. Franklin. McGraw-Hill Book Company, Inc., New York, N. Y., 1958.
4. OPTIMUM DESIGN TECHNIQUE FOR FEEDBACK CONTROL SYSTEMS (book), S. S. L. Chang. Graw-Hill Book Company, Inc. (to be published).
5. THE DESIGN OF SAMPLED-DATA FEEDBACK SYSTEMS, G. V. Lago, J. G. Truxal. *AIEE Transactions*, pt. II (*Applications and Industry*), vol. 71, Nov. 1954, pp. 247-53.
6. EXTENSION OF CONTINUOUS-DATA SYSTEM DESIGN TECHNIQUE TO SAMPLED-DATA CONTROL SYSTEMS, G. W. Johnson, D. P. Lindorff, C. Nording. *Ibid.*, vol. 74, Sept. 1955, pp. 252-61.
7. FACTORS IN THE DESIGN OF DIGITAL CONTROLLERS FOR SAMPLED-DATA FEEDBACK SYSTEMS, J. E. Bertram. *Ibid.*, vol. 75, July 1956, pp. 151-61.
8. SAMPLED-DATA CONTROL SYSTEMS (book), E. I. Jury. John Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York, N. Y. 1958.

A Constant-Voltage Battery Charger

C. H. LEET
MEMBER AIEE

W. ZUG
ASSOCIATE MEMBER AIEE

THE USE OF BATTERIES in control centers, such as are found in sub- and central stations, is well established. With this application goes the need for a battery charger which will maintain the battery in a fully charged state. It must also carry any fixed load and be capable of recharging the battery when required by battery and circuit conditions.

Under normal operating conditions, the battery charger, battery, and load are connected in parallel. The charger, up to the limit of its capacity, furnishes the steady connected load, and the current taken by the battery at float voltage. With the charger maintaining a voltage across the battery a few hundredths of a volt per cell in excess of open-circuit voltage, the battery will accept sufficient current to offset internal losses (self-discharge). In this fully charged condition, the battery is said to be floated. The battery furnishes all system load currents in excess of charger capacity, such as momentary currents for circuit breaker closing, tripping, etc. In the event of an a-c power failure in the station, the charger cannot supply direct current and the battery takes over to carry the load. The battery is discharged to a degree de-

pending on the duration of the outage, d-c loads, and the battery capacity. After a-c supply has been restored following a power failure, or when the d-c load has decreased to within the charger rating, the battery has to be recharged. During the recharge, the charger must also carry the normal connected load.

Requirements of a Float Charger

In order to float the battery and thus keep it fully charged, the charger should exhibit a constant-voltage characteristic with changing load conditions and a-c supply voltage fluctuations. This constant-voltage characteristic is also one of the requirements to obtain maximum life of the battery. Because of the low incremental impedance of the charger required for the constant-voltage characteristic, current limiting provisions have to be made to limit the charger current to a

safe value when the battery voltage is low, i.e., when recharging a battery after a-c power failure. A means of adjusting the output voltage of the charger is required since periodic equalizing charges are usually recommended by battery manufacturers.

Types of Chargers

There are two main groups of chargers: the rotating type and the static rectifier type. The diverter-pole charger is of the rotating type and it meets the aforementioned electrical requirements. However, wear and maintenance, down time, and noise which are typical for rotating equipment have encouraged the development of static chargers. Ordinary static equipment eliminates the disadvantages of the rotating machines in respect to wear and noise but does not meet the electrical requirements inherently as do rotating chargers. Sensitivity to a-c supply voltage fluctuations has been an important factor in preventing the static rectifier charger from being widely used. Furthermore the range from zero to about 15% of the charger output current rating where it is most important for the life

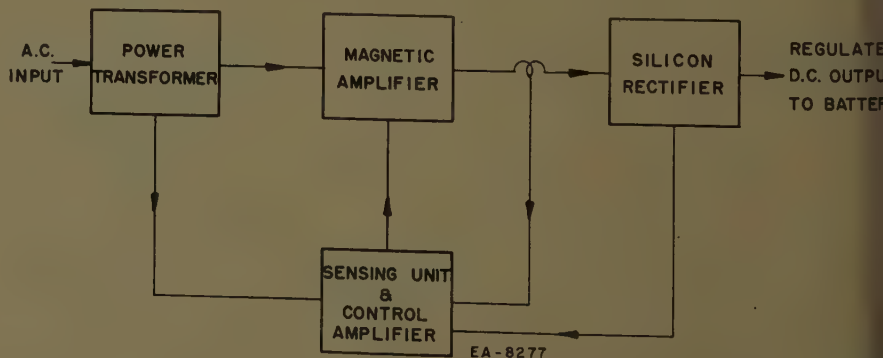


Fig. 1. UR rectifier block diagram

Paper 60-895, recommended by the AIEE Chemical Industry Committee and approved by the AIEE Technical Operations Department for presentation at the AIEE Summer General Meeting, Atlantic City, N. J., June 19-24, 1960. Manuscript submitted March 24, 1960; made available for printing May 17, 1960.

C. H. LEET is with The Electric Storage Battery Company, Philadelphia, Pa., and W. ZUG is with The Electric Products Company, Cleveland, Ohio.

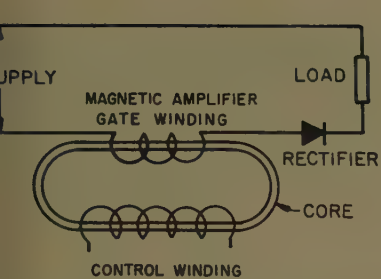


Fig. 1. Utility Rectifier Block Diagram

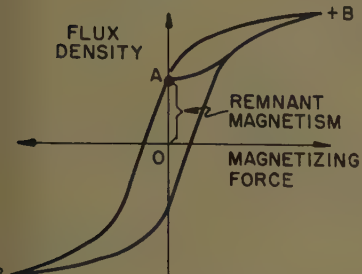


Fig. 3. Hysteresis loop

battery to hold constant voltage, is included in the closely regulated e.

UR Rectifier

o overcome the deficiencies of both rotating charger and the rectifier as stated above, the Utility Rectifier-type "UR" was developed. The charger uses the latest advances in it technique in connection with components such as silicon rectifiers that have no detectable aging and theoretically unlimited life, and magnetic amplifiers have high efficiency and long life comparable to a transformer. All advantages of the rotating charger are retained or actually improved. The charger is relatively insensitive to a-c voltage fluctuations, will regulate constant voltage from zero to full load, limit the output current to a safe level for charger and battery, can easily be adjusted for output voltage, retains ruggedness of a machine, and actually improves over-all conversion efficiency. The UR charger eliminates all the obvious disadvantages of a rotating element, such as wear, maintenance, and noise.

Theory of Operation

UR RECTIFIER BLOCK DIAGRAM

Fig. 1, only the components essential to the operation of the charger are shown. Essential components for the operation and auxiliary devices such as switches, alarm relay, etc., are omitted. The function of the components shown in the diagram is as follows:

POWER TRANSFORMER

The power transformer serves a double purpose. First of all it serves as a matching transformer to match the available a-c line voltage to the battery charging voltage requirements. Taps on the high-voltage winding facilitate the matching of the a-c line voltage available at the charger installation to the transformer. In using the voltage tap closest to the nominal value of the a-c supply voltage, the average value around which the voltage fluctuates, the maximum benefit from the regulating capability of the charger will be obtained and at the same time will result in the best possible efficiency and power factor.

The transformer also serves as an isolating transformer. Usually the a-c supply is grounded in one-phase center tap, or star point. The transformer, however, isolates the battery circuit from the a-c supply circuit and the battery circuit can be operated grounded or ungrounded.

MAGNETIC AMPLIFIER

The magnetic amplifier can be viewed as a valve which, as signalled by the sensing unit with a control amplifier, allows more or less current to pass through the rectifiers to the battery. The magnetic amplifier is of the self-saturating type in a modified saturable reactor circuit.

The reactor consists of a core on which one a-c winding also known as load or gate winding, and one or more control windings are placed. Fig. 2 shows a simple self-saturating circuit.

If we assume that the magnetic amplifier gate winding is connected to an a-c supply without rectifier or load in series, and with no signal applied to the control winding, then the assembly will behave like a simple reactor or a transformer in no load condition. A voltage is being induced which will impede the flow of current and only magnetizing current will flow. According to the equation $e = d\phi/dt$, however, a change of magnetic flux must take place to induce a voltage. If therefore, for some reason the magnetic flux reaches saturation, then no change in flux will take place, no voltage will be induced, and the current flow will no longer be impeded. Saturation of the core can be obtained by several means, such as high a-c voltage on the gate winding, a d-c control signal, or by self-saturation. Fig. 3 shows a typical hysteresis loop of a silicon core obtained by driving a core to positive saturation and then reversing the magnetizing force to negative saturation. This is also the loop obtained when apply-

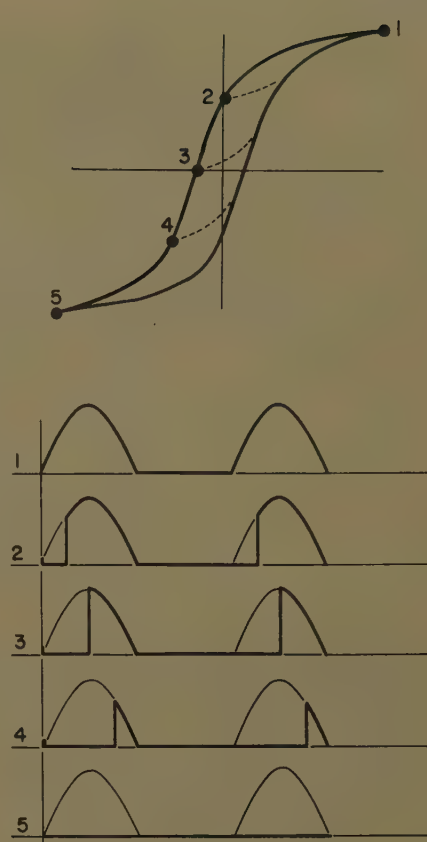


Fig. 4. Output waveshape

ing full rated a-c voltage to the gate winding. If we now place a rectifier diode in series with the gate winding, then the magnetizing current will be blocked in the negative direction by the diode preventing a demagnetization of the core during the negative half-cycle. Neglecting leakage currents, the core will retain a remnant magnetism from O to A. At the next positive half cycle the flux will start its excursion at point A rather than at point -B and the core will saturate quickly. This mode of operation is known as self-saturation. After saturation, the current is limited only by the load resistance. It is now possible to reset the point A on the left flank of the hysteresis loop to anywhere between +B and -B by means of the d-c control winding. When A is reset to -B then no saturation will take place and the output will be magnetizing current only. Any output between minimum and maximum can be obtained in using the proper reset point as adjusted by means of the control winding.

Fig. 4 shows the output current waveshape, or voltage, appearing across the load for various reset points.

The half-wave magnetic amplifier is commercially impractical because of the voltage induced in the control winding by transformer action before the core is saturated, and because of the low average

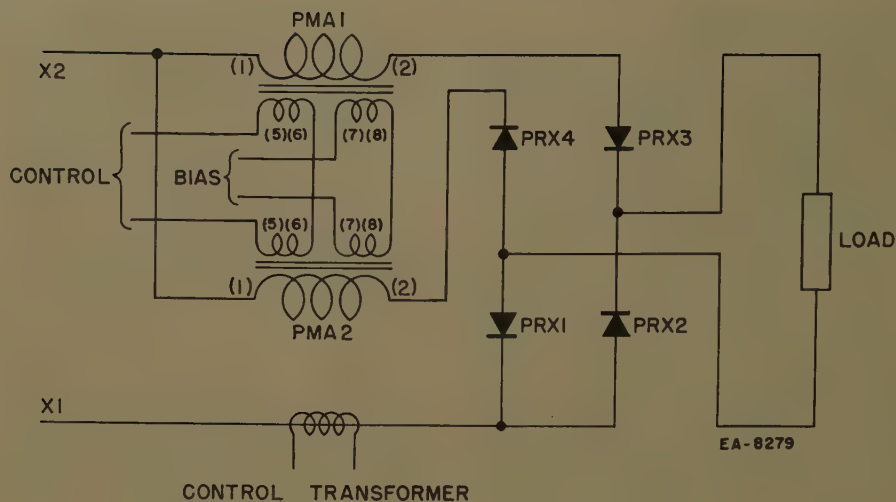


Fig. 5. Rectifier bridge circuit

output, unequal loading of transformer, and a-c line. For this reason a full-wave arrangement is used in which the voltages induced in the control windings oppose each other during alternate half-cycles and cancel each other. From among the various possible circuits, the bridge circuit was chosen since it imposes the lowest blocking voltage upon the rectifier diodes and because of its transient behavior. This circuit is shown in Fig. 5.

The control power being used is very small and consists essentially only of the d-c magnetizing force. The control winding likewise is very small and requires only a fraction of the copper used in the gate winding. This is in contrast with simple saturable reactors which operate on an equal ampere-turn principle between gate and control winding and where the copper required for the control winding is approximately equal to the gate copper requirement.

The core material being used is grain-oriented silicon steel which permits high flux densities with very little magnetizing force requirements. The core is tape wound and cut (C-core) so that the coils can be inserted easily without using special winding techniques. The core halves have lapped butt joints for a minimum air gap. The resulting magnetic amplifier assembly is of the smallest size presently possible for power reactors.

Fig. 6 shows a typical transfer or control characteristic of the self-saturating magnetic amplifier described. It can be noted that with zero control applied, some output exists. To obtain minimum output a negative control signal has to be applied and for maximum output a positive signal has to be applied. This seems to require a reversible control signal. However, in using a separate control winding, normally called a bias winding, the

characteristic can be shifted to any position required. Fig. 7 shows an arrangement being used in the utility rectifier where bias is adjusted for minimum output and the control can now be unidirectional. Power ratios between control and output of 1:5,000 are easily obtained.

RECTIFIER

The rectifier network is of the full-wave bridge type and serves a double purpose: first, to rectify the a-c power for charging the battery, and second, to serve as diodes for the self-saturated magnetic amplifiers.

The diodes are silicon rectifiers which are not subject to aging as is selenium. They can be used at ambient temperatures up to 150 degrees, have much lower leakage current and lower forward voltage drop than selenium. Over-all efficiency of the diode can be as high as 99%. The silicon diodes are mounted on heat dissipating fins of proper size to limit the junction temperature of the diode to a safe value. Protection against surge and short-circuit currents is obtained by properly co-ordinated and extremely fast acting current-limiting silver quartz sand fuses. This fast action is required because of the small thermal capacity of the diode junction. Circuit breakers alone, without current-limiting fuses, are not fast enough to afford complete protection of the diodes.

SENSING UNIT AND CONTROL AMPLIFIER

The sensing unit consists of several sections:

- voltage sensing network
- current sensing network
- control amplifier

Voltage Sensing Network

Fig. 8 shows the principal components used for voltage sensing. These com-

ponents are $P1$, $P2$, $R1$ comprising one of the bridge, $R2$ another leg, and $R3$ the third leg. The fourth leg, $R4$, is immaterial and necessary only to supply the voltage reference diode $D11$ (Zener diode) with sufficient operating current. $P1$ and $P2$ are potentiometers to adjust float and equalizing voltage separately. When switch ECT is closed, equalizing voltage can be adjusted with $P2$ and ECT open, float voltage can be adjusted by means of $P1$. When $P1$ and $P2$ are adjusted, only ECT needs to be opened to change from equalizing voltage to float voltage or vice versa. The unit uses a timer which opens ECT after a preset time period to return the charge from equalizing to float voltage. The heart of the sensing unit is the voltage reference or Zener diode. This diode exhibits a voltage drop which is essentially independent of changes in current flow in the reverse breakdown or Zener region and therefore it is also independent of changes in supply voltage V . A portion of the sensing voltage is compared with the constant reference voltage and differences exist, corrective measures taken by the control amplifier which then controls the main stage magnetic amplifier. This correcting principle is known as closed-loop regulator or feedback control. As long as the unit is operated in the voltage controlled range, the bridge network will be balanced except for a small error voltage necessary to drive the control amplifier (preamplifier).

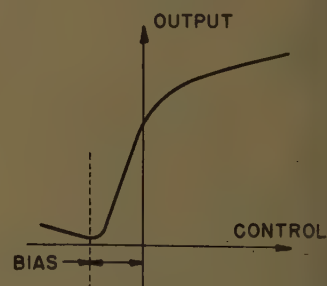


Fig. 6. Magnetic amplifier characteristic with zero control signal

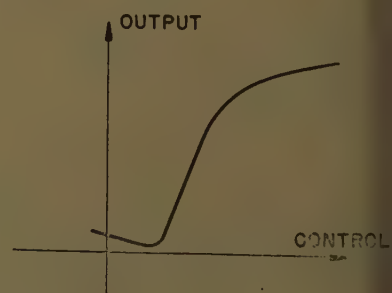


Fig. 7. Magnetic amplifier characteristic with negative control signal

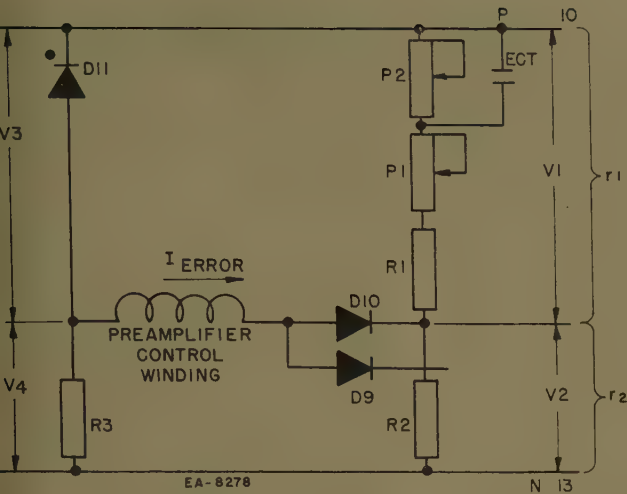


Fig. 8. Voltage sensing network

the bridge is balanced when

$$V_2 = V_3 : V_4 \quad (1)$$

The ratio of $V_1 : V_2$ is equal to the ratio of r_1 to r_2 whereby r_1 equals $R_1 + P_1 + P_2$ and r_2 equals R_2 . V_3 has a constant value and V_4 is the difference between V and V_3 . V_2 is also the difference between V and V_1 . The bridge ratio can now be expressed as follows:

$$\frac{V_1}{V_2} = \frac{r_2}{r_1} \text{ or } \frac{V}{V_1} - 1 = \frac{r_2}{r_1} \text{ or } V_1 = \frac{V}{1 + \frac{r_2}{r_1}} \quad (2)$$

It is evident then that V_1 changes with change of supply or sensing voltage V . The reference voltage V_3 remains constant. The difference between V_1 and V_3 is the error voltage is

$$V_{\text{error}} = V_1 - V_3 = \frac{V}{1 + \frac{r_2}{r_1}} - V_3 \quad (3)$$

The resistance r_1 is composed of R_1 and P_1 . If we now assume that the error voltage can be neglected since it is less than 1% of the sensing voltage we can manipulate the equation for error voltage and obtain

$$P_1 + P_2 = \frac{V_3 \times R_2}{V - V_3} \quad (4)$$

Since V_3 and R_2 are constant, a change in either P_1 or P_2 will result in a change in the sensing voltage V . An easy means of voltage adjustment is thereby available.

Current Sensing Network

Fig. 9 shows the principal components of the current sensing network, used to limit the current output to a safe value. The current transformer measures the current flowing in the a-c line of the power supply. Control rectifiers CR5 and CR6 rectify the transformer output in

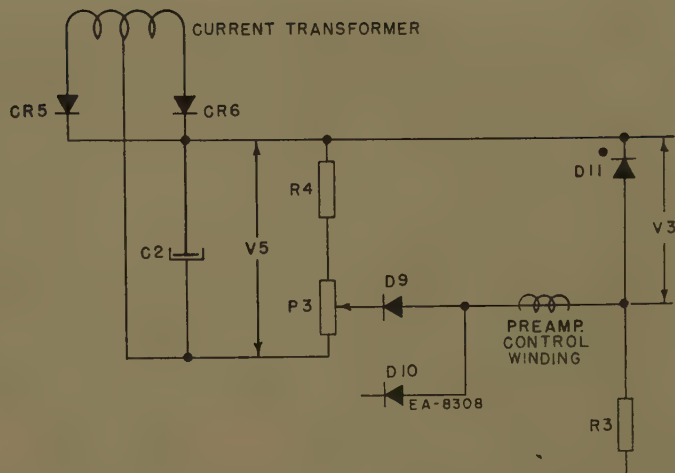


Fig. 9. Current sensing network

a full-wave center-tap arrangement and supply the network R_4 and P_3 . C_2 serves as a filter capacitor. The voltage drop across R_4 and P_3 is therefore directly proportional to the main current measured by the current transformer. This voltage is compared with V_3 , the reference voltage, and if this voltage as preset by P_3 is larger than V_3 , a current will flow in the preamplifier control winding to take corrective action, that is, to limit the current at the preset value. The reason for diodes D_9 and D_{10} is now also evident. They are simply a means of selection between current and voltage control. If the current sensing voltage V_5 is of a larger value than the voltage sensing voltage V_1 , then the unit will be operating on current control. D_9 will conduct the preamplifier control current while D_{10} will be reverse biased and prevent interference from the voltage sensing network.

Conversely if the voltage sensing voltage is larger than the current sensing voltage, D_{10} will conduct the preamplifier control current. The diode D_9 will then be reverse biased to prevent interference from the current sensing network.

Control Amplifier

The control amplifier serves to amplify the error signal obtained from the current or voltage sensing networks to a level necessary to drive the power magnetic amplifier to cutoff or saturation. The mode of operation of the control amplifier is the same as explained for the power magnetic amplifier, only the construction and core material used is different. The core is a tape wound toroidal core exhibiting a square loop hysteresis characteristic. Since this core has no air gap and a very small leakage field, a high amplification factor is obtained. The schematic diagram for the control amplifier is essentially a duplicate of the power magnetic ampli-

fier, and only the control characteristic is different as shown in Fig. 10.

Because of the high residual flux density (remnant magnetism) in the self-saturating mode of operation of the core material used, the output is practically maximum with no control current applied to the control amplifier control winding. An increase in control current results in a decrease of output current. Because of this, no bias winding is required for the control amplifier in this application. Feedback control systems, especially with high gain amplifiers, tend to be unstable, therefore an antihunt provision has to be made to stabilize the circuit. The second control winding on the control amplifier is used as an antihunt winding and will effectively suppress sustained oscillations.

The complete antihunt network consists of capacitor C_3 (Fig. 11), resistor R_5 , and the antihunt winding on the toroid. Due to the capacitor, the winding will get a signal only during transient conditions. The polarity of the winding is such that it opposes any change in the output of the rectifier charger.

CIRCUIT FUNCTION

If we consider a steady-state condition on a 60-cell utility rectifier at half-rated current, battery float voltage, and nominal a-c supply voltage, then typical values of control currents and error voltage would be as follows:

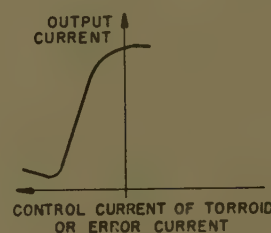
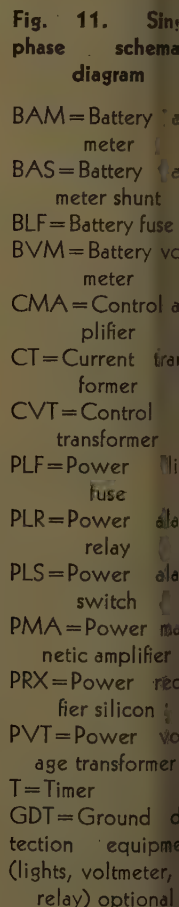


Fig. 10. Control amplifier characteristic

At this point, the feedback regulator

The actual voltage decrease from the first steady-state condition is only 0.2 volt, and this is due to the high ampli-

In the average substation and central station where the UR charger is installed



voltages or voltage spikes occur. These may come from the a-c supply, transformer leakage reactance etc., or they may come from the d-c load when highly inductive circuits are switched. Voltage spikes coming from the a-c supply at a value up to 600 volts have been detected on the low-voltage side of the power transformer at the input of the rectifier stage. Voltage spikes in excess of 1,000 volts are caused by switching inductive loads and are also quite common. Although the voltage behind them is usually very low, it is sufficient to start the Zener breakdown of a silicon diode and destroy the junction. To prevent damage to the silicon diode, a surge voltage suppressor is required. As long as voltage spikes are suppressed by the suppressor, in their voltage build-up, to values below the breakdown voltage of the diode, no breakdown will take place. Capacitors and nonlinear resistors (thyrite) are usually used for this purpose.

Capacitors can be used effectively if the surge voltages are of a short duration, representing a frequency in the order of kilocycles, and of low power. Longer duration and higher power surges will require very large capacitors. These may convert the surges into a low-voltage long-duration transient, which is not necessarily safe. Capacitors in connection with other circuit elements may lead to oscillation and other surge voltage conditions. Nonlinear resistors exhibit a decreasing resistance characteristic with increased voltage impressed across them. Thus when a voltage spike appears across such a nonlinear resistor, its resistance decreases and the resulting surge current drains the power off the surge voltage, preventing a dangerous voltage build-up. These resistors, unfortunately, have an inherent current drain causing a power loss which is considerable in the range where they exhibit their most nonlinear characteristic.

Since the UR charger must always be connected to a battery and the battery behaves as an extremely large capacitance, it was decided to utilize this battery property for surge voltage suppression. Reference literature ascribes a capacitance effect equal to several hundred farads to a battery.¹ This capacitance effect is sufficient to limit even higher power, long duration surges to a safe value and does not cause additional power loss, i.e., beyond the current normally required to float the battery. In the bridge-type rectifier circuit, one surge voltage protecting element is sufficient to give protection against voltage spikes if connected directly across the bridge output, regardless of whether

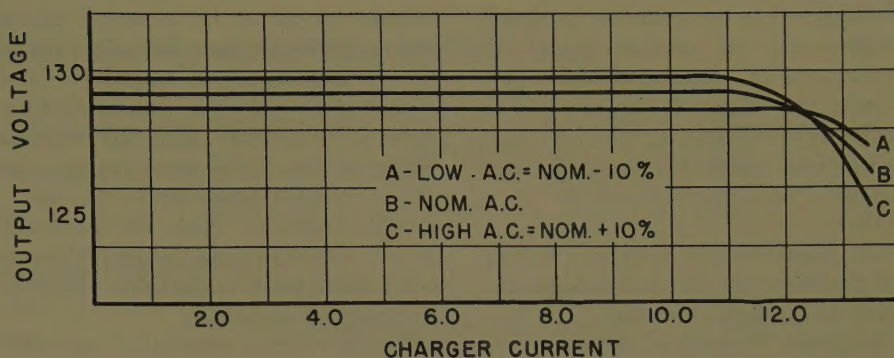


Fig. 12. Charger voltage regulation

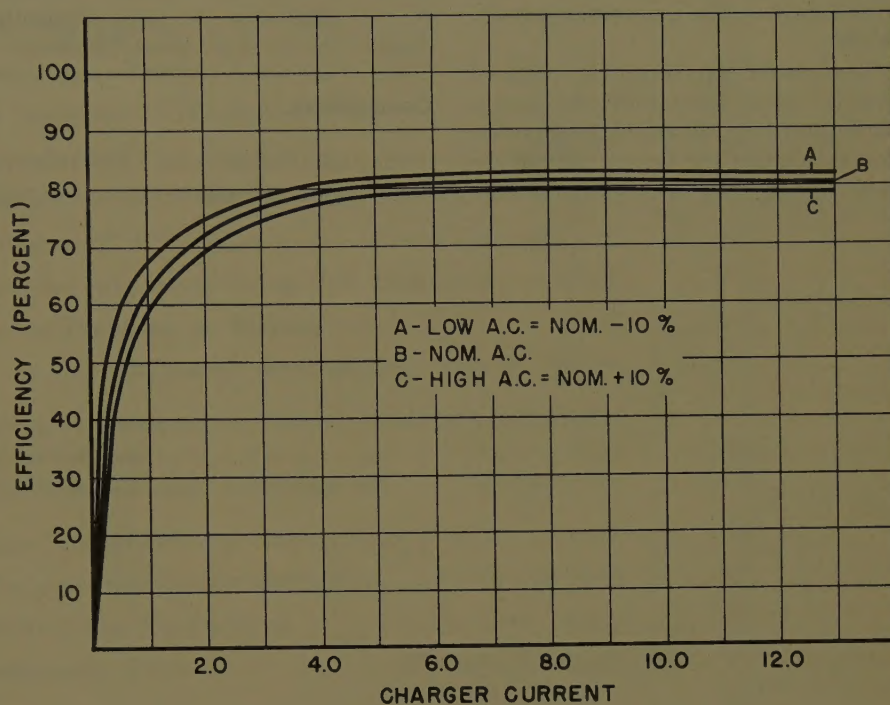


Fig. 13. Charger efficiency

the voltage surges are coming from the a-c side or from the d-c side of the bridge. To retain the protection of the battery against a-c and d-c voltage surges, it is imperative that these two points be observed very closely:

1. The impedance of the connecting leads between battery and charger be kept to an absolute minimum. Otherwise a voltage build up may take place in the lead impedance on extremely short duration spikes before they can be drained off by the battery. Leads should be twisted together, runs should be as short as possible, and sharp bends be avoided.
2. Load leads should be connected directly to the battery terminals and not to the charger. Connecting the charger to a d-c bus and the battery to the same bus should be avoided as this practice can easily lead to a voltage build-up which can be dangerous.

Features

One of the features of the type UR rectifier as mentioned before is its capability

to regulate the voltage down to zero load. This is accomplished by means of a special magnetic amplifier design which keeps the magnetizing current below the current drawn by the voltage sensing network and therefore regulation down to zero load is possible. It is important however, to keep in mind that the battery has to be connected to the charger output in order to obtain regulation to zero load. The magnetic amplifier is subjected only to the difference between a-c voltage and battery voltage as long as the battery is connected. If the battery were to be removed, the magnetic amplifier gate winding would be subjected to the full a-c voltage which is several times the normal gate voltage, the magnetizing current would increase tremendously and regulation would be limited. This, however, is of little consequence since the voltage regulation accuracy is primarily of importance for the life of the battery and is main-

tained as long as the battery is connected. Furthermore, the charger should not be operated, i.e., energized by a-c supply, without the battery in the circuit since the battery acts as a very effective means to suppress transient voltages or surge voltages which could endanger the silicon diodes.

The charger affords protection to itself and the battery in the case of a fault, providing full back-up protection.

Sustained overload is limited by the current-limit circuit and back-up protection is provided by the inverse time element of a dual element fuse or by thermal trip elements in the transformer primary circuit.

Short-circuit protection is obtained from fast-acting current-limiting fuses in the d-c output circuit and back-up protection from either the fast element of the dual element fuse in the transformer

primary circuit or by a second set of current-limiting fuses between transformer and magnetic amplifiers. The characteristic of the current-limiting fuses is co-ordinate with the thermal characteristics of the silicon diodes and affords complete protection for any short-circuit condition. There are no other circuit elements (circuit breakers) known today which would operate fast enough to give adequate protection.

Typical voltage regulation and efficiency curves are shown in Figs. 12 and 13. The voltage regulation curve shows also the influence of the current limit circuit. Fig. 11 illustrates the basic schematic diagram for the single phase UR charger.

Conclusions

The UR charger meets the requirements for an ideal sub- and central-station

battery charger. It can maintain battery charge voltage within plus or minus 1% with an a-c voltage variation of plus or minus 10% from zero to rated output current. Being a completely static device, it has no moving elements to wear, create noise, and require maintenance. The use of ample safety factors throughout insure extremely long, trouble-free life. A switch is provided to enable the manual operator give the battery an equalize charge. Optional devices include equalize charge timer, ground detection lights or relays, charge failure indicator, a-c failure alarm, and operation on 50-60-cycle a-c power from a wide range of standard voltages.

Reference

1. BATTERY IMPEDANCE: FARADS, MILLIOHM, MICROHENRYS, E. Wilihnganz, Peter Rohm, *AIEE Transactions*, pt. II (*Applications and Industry*), vol. 78, Sept. 1959, pp. 259-62.

Power Apparatus and Systems—August 1960

60-187	Economic Application of Capacitors to Distribution Feeders....Maxwell . . .	353
60-156	Generation Planning by Simulation..Baldwin, DeSalvo, Hoffman, Plant . . .	359
60-251	Use of Simulated Reserve Margins....Baldwin, Gaver, Hoffman, Rose . . .	365
	Transistorized Phase-Comparison Relaying	
60-163	Principles and Circuits.....Dewey, Hodges . . .	373
60-252	Application and Tests.....Horowitz, McConnell, Seeley . . .	381
60-184	Determination of Transient Recovery Voltages.....Falk, Smith, Lloyd . . .	392
60-242	Telemetering Applications and Operating Experience.....Johannson . . .	402
60-190	Analysis of Galloping Electric Transmission Lines.....McDaniel . . .	406
60-250	Arresters on H-V Stations.....Breuer, Hopkinson, Johnson, Schultz . . .	414
60-248	Analysis of Distribution Systems.....Campbell, Ender, Gangel, Talley . . .	423
60-151	Proposed Revisions of Standards C37.3 and C37.4....Committee Report . . .	443
60-152	Proposed Revisions of Standards C37.5 and C37.9.....Committee Report . . .	457
60-153	Proposed Revisions of Standard C37.10.....Committee Report . . .	477
60-179	Power System Economic Load Allocation Using New Equation....Fisher . . .	507
60-189	Effect of Tighter Conductor Tensions on Transmission Costs.....Fritz . . .	513
60-256	Peak Load Economics.....Galloway, Kirchmayer, Marsh, Mellor . . .	527
	Effect of Current Chopping in Breakers on Networks and Transformers	
60-209	I—Theoretical Considerations.....Lee . . .	535
60-207	II—Experimental Techniques and Investigations.....Greenwood . . .	545
60-244	Operation of a Power Line Carrier System During Line Faults....Jones . . .	556
60-257	Voltage Harmonics of Salient-Pole Generators—II.....Ginsberg, Jokl . . .	560
60-249	Lightning Protection of Multiline Substations.....Clayton, Young . . .	566
58-1391	Accelerated Voltage-Endurance Tests.....Rhudy, Mazanek . . .	576
	Errata.....	580

Conference Papers Open for Discussion

The conference papers listed below have been accepted for AIEE Transactions and are now open for written discussion until October 27. Duplicate double-spaced typewritten copies for each discussion should be sent to Edward C. Day, Assistant Secretary for Technical Papers, American Institute of Electrical Engineers, 33 West 39th Street, New York 18, N.Y., on or before October 27.

Preprints may be purchased at 50¢ each to members; \$1.00 each to non-members if accompanied by remittance or coupons. Please order by number and send remittance to:

AIEE Order Department
33 West 39th Street
New York 18, N. Y.

- | | |
|--------|---|
| 60-637 | Studies of Electrodynamic Forces Occurring at Electrical Contacts.....Snowdon |
| 60-639 | New Contactorless Precision D-C Hoist Has Wide Speed Range and Torque Control.....Hansen, Karlson, Mierendorf |

AIEE PUBLICATIONS

Electrical Engineering

Official monthly publication containing articles of broad interest, technical papers, digests, and news sections: Institute Activities, Current Interest, New Products, Industrial Notes, and Trade Literature. Automatically sent to all members and enrolled students in consideration of payment of dues. (Members may not reduce the amount of their dues payment by reason of nonsubscription.) Additional subscriptions are available at the nonmember rates.

Member Prices	Nonmember Prices	
	Basic Prices*†	Extra Postage for Foreign Subscription
	annually \$12*	\$1.00
	Single copies \$1.50*	

Bimonthly Publications

Containing all officially approved technical papers collated with discussion (if any) in three broad fields of subject matter as follows:

	annually	annually	
Communication and Electronics	\$5.00	\$8.00*	\$0.75
Applications and Industry	\$5.00	\$8.00*	\$0.75
Power Apparatus and Systems	\$5.00	\$8.00*	\$0.75

Each member may subscribe to any one, two, or all three bimonthly publications at the rate of \$5.00 each per year. A second subscription to any or all of the bimonthly publications may be obtained at the nonmember rate of \$8.00 each per year.

Single copies may be obtained when available.

\$1.50 each	\$1.50* each
----------------	-----------------

AIEE Transactions

An annual volume in three parts containing all officially approved technical papers with discussions corresponding to six issues of the bimonthly publication of the same name bound in cloth with a stiff cover.

	annually	annually	
Part I Communication and Electronics	\$4.00	\$8.00*	\$0.75
Part II Applications and Industry	\$4.00	\$8.00*	\$0.75
Part III Power Apparatus and Systems	\$4.00	\$8.00*	\$0.75

Annual subscription to all three parts (beginning with vol. 77 for 1958).

Annual subscription to any two parts.

\$10.00	\$20.00*	\$2.25
	\$15.00*	\$1.50

AIEE Standards

Listing of Standards, test codes, and reports with prices furnished on request.

Special Publications

Committee reports on special subjects, bibliographies, surveys, and papers and discussions of some specialized technical conferences, as announced in ELECTRICAL ENGINEERING.

*Discount 25% of basic nonmember prices to college and public libraries. Publishers and subscription agencies 15% of basic nonmember prices. For available discounts on Standards and special publications, obtain price lists from Order Department at Headquarters.

†Foreign prices payable New York exchange

Send all orders to:

Order Department
American Institute of Electrical Engineers
33 West 39th Street, New York 18, N. Y.